

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX



## The International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists I A A P

## ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

## SECOND EDITION 11.2007

International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists  
Goetheanum  
Medical Section  
4143 Dornach  
Switzerland

[www.iaap.org.uk](http://www.iaap.org.uk)

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Introductory Note

### International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists, IAAP

The IAAP is the Governing Body for National Anthroposophic Pharmacists Associations. Its Aims and Objectives are <sup>1</sup>:

- To set standards for National Associations who wish to be recognised as members of the IAAP.
- To represent, at international level, anthroposophic medicine from the professional pharmacists perspective: Anthroposophic pharmacy being seen as an “extension” of conventional pharmacy;
- To award international accreditation of Anthroposophic Pharmacists training materials and publications;
- To facilitate collegueship between anthroposophic pharmacists world-wide by the active building of community between anthroposophic pharmacists;
- To act as an initiator/co-coordinator for activities which require international action.

It is in respect of this last aim that the Board is pleased to publish the 2<sup>nd</sup> edition of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex (APC).

The structure of this 2<sup>nd</sup> edition has substantially been revised amending the information concerning the systematics of anthroposophic pharmacy and its substances/preparations/products. The lists of starting materials used have been updated (nomenclature, references to official pharmacopoeias).

In order to recognise this document as an international document it is the intention of the IAAP board in line with its international status to publish the future edition in several languages.

The APC is reviewed and updated by an anthroposophic pharmaceutical committee responsible to the IAAP board.

#### Members of the APC committee

**Herwig Judex**, chemist, Germany

**Judith Klahre Parker**, pharmacist, United Kingdom, Chairperson of the the British Association, BAAP, (British Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists), Board Member of the IAAP  
Deputy: **Audrey Jones**, regulatory scientist, United Kingdom

**Monica Mennet von Eiff**, pharmacist, Switzerland, President of the Swiss association VAEPS (Verband für Anthroposophisch Erweiterte Pharmazie in der Schweiz - Association for Anthroposophically Extended Pharmacy in Switzerland)  
Deputy: **Jakob Maier**, pharmacist, Switzerland, Board Member of VAEPS

**Christiaan Mol**, pharmacist, Germany, Chairman of the APC committee, Board Member of the IAAP, Member of the Committee on Manufacturing Methods of the German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia

**Peter Pedersen**, pharmacist, Germany, Member of the Committee on Manufacturing Methods of the German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

The APC is recognised by the following national anthroposophic pharmaceutical associations:

the **French** Association **AFERPA** (Association Française d'étude et de recherche sur la pharmacie anthroposofique - French Association for Studies and Research on Anthroposophic Pharmacy);  
the **British** Association, **BAAP** (British Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists) and its Associate, **New Zealand**;  
the **Belgian/Dutch** Association **BNVAA** (Belgisch-Nederlandse Vereniging van Antroposofisch georiënteerde Apothekers - Belgian Dutch Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists);  
the **Brazilian** Association **Farmantropo** (Associação Brasileira de Farmácia Antroposófica - Brazilian Anthroposophic Pharmacy Association);  
the **German** Association **GAPiD** (Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Apotheker in Deutschland - Society of Anthroposophic Pharmacists in Germany);  
the **Austrian** Association **ÖGAPh** (Österreichische Gesellschaft anthroposophischer Pharmazeuten - Austrian Society of Anthroposophic Pharmacists);  
the **Italian** Association **SOFAl** (Società di farmacisti antroposofi in Italia - Society of Anthroposophic Pharmacists in Italy);  
the **Swiss** association **VAEPS** (Verband für Anthroposophisch Erweiterte Pharmazie in der Schweiz - Association for Anthroposophically Extended Pharmacy in Switzerland).

*Dr. Manfred Kohlhase, President IAAP, November 2007*



1 For full details of the IAAP Guidelines, see website – [www.iaap.org.uk](http://www.iaap.org.uk)

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Acknowledgements for the second edition of the APC

Just as for the first edition of the APC the **IVAA** and **ECPM** now strongly welcome this second and substantially amended second edition of the APC. We are thankful to the IAAP and its APC committee because they guarantee the constant update of this important pharmaceutical work for the quality as well as the information on anthroposophic medicinal products.

# IVAA

Internationale Vereinigung Anthroposophischer Ärztgesellschaften  
International Federation of Anthroposophical Medical Associations  
Fédération Internationale des Associations Médicales Anthroposophiques

Helsinki, 15.09.2007

Dr. Peter Zimmermann,  
President IVAA

European council of doctors for plurality in medicine Brussels  
Europäische Vereinigung der Ärzteverbände der besonderen Therapierichtungen Brüssel  
Conseil Européen des médecins pour le pluralisme thérapeutique Bruxelles  
Consejo Europeo médicos para la pluralidad médica en Bruselas  
Federazione dei medici Europei per il pluralismo in medicina Bruxelles  
Europese federatie van artsenverenigingen voor het therapeutisch pluralisme Brussel

Docteur Robert KEMPENICH, Président, 1, rue Goethe, F – 67000 Strasbourg, Tél. 03.88.37.95.96 Fax 03.88.37.00.88

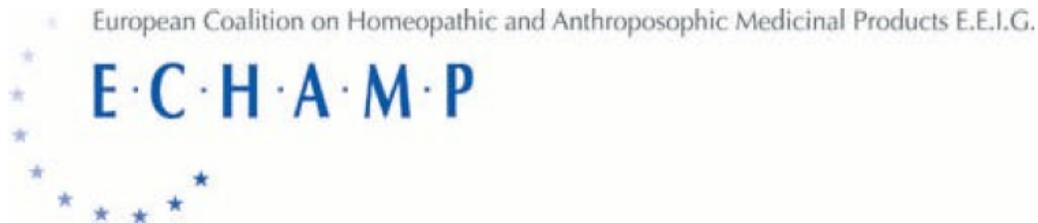
e-mail: [dr.kempenich@wanadoo.fr](mailto:dr.kempenich@wanadoo.fr)



Strasbourg, le 15 septembre 2007  
Dr Robert KEMPENICH  
Président de l'ECPM

---

ECHAMP, the European Coalition on Homeopathic and Anthroposophic Medicinal Products  
welcomes the second edition of the APC.



Brussels, 15.09.2007  
Nand de Herdt  
General Secretary ECHAMP

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Acknowledgements for the first edition of the APC



Internationale Vereinigung Anthroposophischer Ärztgesellschaften  
International Federation of Anthroposophical Medical Associations  
Fédération Internationale des Associations Médicales Anthroposophiques

The IVAA represents Anthroposophic Medical Associations on an international level and coordinates their legal and political activities which are of international significance.

The IVAA strongly welcomes the first edition of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex, APC.

After more than 80 years since its beginning, anthroposophic medicine is now practised in more than 60 countries worldwide.

Today for transparency and also educational purposes it is of paramount importance that anthroposophic medicines are described in a pharmaceutical codex. Anthroposophic doctors recognise that this first edition of the APC is a fundamental key work in this sense.

We therefore are grateful to the IAAP, the international umbrella organisation of professional anthroposophic pharmacists' associations for the publication of the first edition of the APC.

The substances used in anthroposophic medicine, the wide range of different manufacturing methods as well as the pharmaceutical quality criteria of the preparations obtained are herewith documented in a reliable way.

We wish that the APC will soon be recognised by any concerning authority and/or may provide scientific material to be properly considered for the regulatory framework of all countries, where anthroposophic medicine is practised.

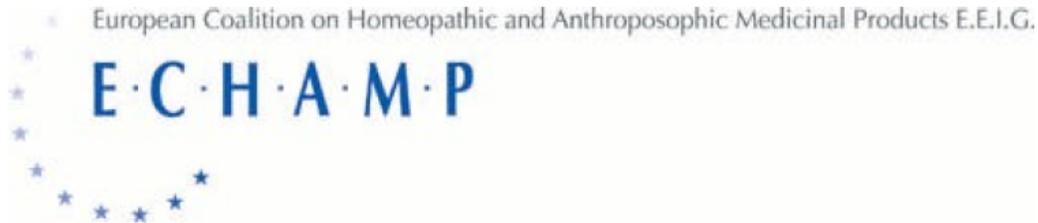
We also see the chance that the APC may set quality standards for the preparation of anthroposophic remedies by retail pharmacies.

Milan, 21.5.05

Dr. Giancarlo Buccheri,  
President IVAA

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Acknowledgements for the first edition of the APC



ECHAMP, the European Coalition on Homeopathic and Anthroposophic Medicinal Products presently represents more than 50 companies manufacturing and/or distributing homeopathic and anthroposophic medicinal products in the European Union.

The Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex (APC) contains extensive information regarding the quality of anthroposophic medicinal products collected by the International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists (IAAP). In order to provide transparency on anthroposophic medicinal products and pharmacy, the APC describes quality standards for raw materials and manufacturing methods. Furthermore it includes a list of substances used in anthroposophic pharmacy.

With the intention to include relevant industry information, IAAP has consulted the ECHAMP members concerned during the compilation of the APC.

ECHAMP acknowledges and endorses the APC and its contents.  
We shall also continue the dialogue and exchange of know-how with the IAAP.

Brussels, 01.07.2005  
Nand de Herdt  
General Secretary ECHAMP

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Acknowledgements for the first edition of the APC

European council of doctors for plurality in medicine Brussels  
Europäische Vereinigung der Ärzteverbände der besonderen Therapierichtungen Brüssel  
Conseil Européen des médecins pour le pluralisme thérapeutique Bruxelles  
Consejo Europeo medicos para la pluralidad médica en Bruselas  
Federazione dei medici Europei per il pluralismo in medicina Bruxelles  
Europese federatie van artsenverenigingen voor het therapeutisch pluralisme Brussel

Docteur Robert KEMPENICH, Président, 1, rue Goethe, F – 67000 Strasbourg, Tél. 03.88.37.95.96 Fax 03.88.37.00.88  
e-mail: [dr.kempenich@wanadoo.fr](mailto:dr.kempenich@wanadoo.fr)



Strasbourg, le 31 mai 2005

L'ECPM, fondée en 1989, est une Fédération Européenne d'associations médicales regroupant plus de 50.000 médecins pratiquant les Médecines Alternatives et Complémentaires (CAM) répartis à travers tous les Etats Membres de l'EU. Son but est de promouvoir le pluralisme des approches médicales tant au niveau européen que dans les différents Etats Membres de l'EU

La médecine anthroposophique existe depuis plus de 80 années et, est pratiquée dans tous les pays européens. Les médicaments anthroposophiques sont prescrits régulièrement par un nombre toujours grandissant de médecins membres de l'ECPM. C'est pourquoi nous saluons tout particulièrement la publication de l'Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex. Nous félicitons l'International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists (IAAP), l'organisation qui regroupe sur un plan international les pharmaciens d'orientation anthroposophique.

L'APC donne des informations claires et fondamentales concernant la qualité des médicaments anthroposophiques. L'éventail très large des médicaments utilisés en médecine anthroposophique et la grande diversité des modes de préparation sont très bien documentés dans cette publication. L'APC est donc d'une importance capitale pour une bonne pratique de la médecine anthroposophique mais aussi une garantie de sécurité pour les patients, à laquelle les médecins se sentent obligés.

L'ECPM souhaite que l'APC soit pris en compte par les autorités de santé de tous les pays européens car il contribue à protéger la santé publique en garantissant des médicaments de très haute qualité.

Dr Robert KEMPENICH  
Président de l'ECPM

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Foreword

Pharmacy extended by the principles of anthroposophy began to be developed at the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century by Rudolf Steiner (founder of anthroposophy, 1861 - 1925) and Oskar Schmiedel (Austrian chemist, 1887 - 1959), in collaboration with a number of physicians. Their aim was to reinterpret and complement the results of pharmaceutical and medical research with insights gained from anthroposophic research of the human being and nature.

The basis of anthroposophic approach to pharmacy consists in the “holistic” knowledge of mankind and nature, which recognizes the notion that human beings and the kingdoms of nature are related through a common evolution<sup>1</sup>.

This perception leads to a comprehensive view of substances in their relationship to health, illness and to a specific approach to pharmacy.

Therefore anthroposophic pharmacy is using substances from the mineral, plant and animal kingdoms<sup>2,3</sup>.

Anthroposophic medicinal products have been on the market world-wide and prescribed by qualified medical practitioners since 1921.

The range of anthroposophic medicinal products is partially determined by the physical characters of substances, whereby allopathic, phytotherapeutic and homoeopathic criteria are taken into consideration. Most particularly, anthroposophic medicinal products are characterised by their manufacturing processes involving specific anthroposophic and typical homoeopathic pharmaceutical procedures. The range of anthroposophic medicinal products includes potentised medicinal products, manufactured by using the methods of the official homoeopathic pharmacopoeias, as well as concentrated mineral, herbal or animal substances or preparations and compounded medicinal products. Considering this diversity, anthroposophic medicinal products, cannot be defined under a single substance classification.

The *Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex APC* gives an overview of substances and methods used in the manufacture of anthroposophic medicinal products as well as of the related quality parameters.

## Legal Situation

Today in the European Union Directive 2001/83/EEC gathers the main legislation concerning medicinal products. The legal status of anthroposophic medicinal products in the EU is closely related to the that of homoeopathic medicinal products (see below).

Preamble of Directive 2001/83/EEC n° (22) refers to anthroposophic medicinal products as follows:

*“Anthroposophic medicinal products, which are described in an official pharmacopoeia and prepared by a homoeopathic method are to be considered, as regards to registration and marketing authorization, as homeopathic medicinal products.”*

In fact from a regulatory point of view anthroposophic medicinal products can be divided into two categories:

- anthroposophic medicinal products manufactured according to a homoeopathic manufacturing method within the meaning of Directive 2001/83/EEC, article 1, 5.:  
*“Any medicinal product prepared from substances called homeopathic stocks in accordance with a homoeopathic manufacturing procedure described by the European Pharmacopoeia or, in absence thereof, by the pharmacopoeias currently used officially in the Member States. (...)”*
- anthroposophic medicinal products other than those manufactured by a homoeopathic manufacturing method.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

These are equally important and have never been included in any pharmacopoeia.

In many EU countries, and also world-wide, medicinal products used for the anthroposophic therapeutics are thus partially integrated in legislation.

Anthroposophic medicinal products as a whole are thus facing the need to gain legal recognition in the EU as well as world-wide, and among other things this requires comprehensive publication of their pharmaceutical quality.

The publication of the *Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex* is to provide transparency of anthroposophic pharmaceutical quality for pharmacists and bodies requiring an appreciation of anthroposophic medicinal products and pharmacy. Furthermore it provides a basis for the maintenance of existing and development of new anthroposophic medicinal products.

## **The relationship of the APC to Pharmacopoeia Europea, to other existing official pharmacopoeias and non official pharmacopoeias**

The APC is published by the IAAP, an independent association of professional pharmacists, within the context of official existing pharmacopoeias.

It is the intent of the APC to refer where possible to existing pharmacopoeias.

In fact anthroposophic medicinal products are often manufactured and controlled according to existing specifications and standards.

A part of the reference pharmacopoeias for the APC are published by official Authorities, in particular  
The European Pharmacopoeia  
The French Pharmacopoeia  
The German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia (which is a part of the German Pharmacopoeia);

Furthermore

The Austrian Pharmacopoeia  
The British Pharmacopoeia  
The Swiss Pharmacopoeia.

In particular the European Pharmacopoeia today represents and for the future will represent a reference of paramount importance for the APC.

Therefore in part IV of the APC containing the lists of the various substances used in anthroposophic pharmacy reference is made where possible to the European Pharmacopoeia and other official pharmacopoeias.

Particularly important Ph. Eur. monographs are:

Herbal drugs for homoeopathic preparations (2045)

Homoeopathic preparations (1038)

Methods of preparation of homoeopathic stocks and potentiation (2371)

Minimising the risk of transmitting animal spongiform encephalopathy agents via human and veterinary medicinal products (50208)

Mother tinctures for homoeopathic preparations (2029)

Tinctures (chapter in 0765)

Viral safety (50107)

Other pharmacopoeias are referred to in the APC are not officially recognised. Nevertheless they provide reliable standards accepted e.g. by Regulatory Authorities, in particular the British Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

The IAAP understands its task to sustain anthroposophic pharmaceutical activities at any level (e.g. manufacturing, quality control, regulatory affairs), **worldwide**, that is, beyond the countries of the European Pharmacopoeia Convention. Therefore during the evolution of the APC other official (or private reliable pharmacopoeias) will possibly be referred to, e.g. the Brazilian Pharmacopoeia.

---

1 Jos Verhulst: "Der Erstgeborene" (The first-born), publisher Verlag Freies Geistesleben, Stuttgart, D 2001.

2 Rudolf Steiner/Ita Wegman: "Grundlegendes für eine Erweiterung der Heilkunst nach geisteswissenschaftlichen Erkenntnissen." GA 27, publisher Rudolf Steiner Verlag, Dornach, CH, 1992.

In English: "Extending Practical Medicine - Fundamental Principles based on the Science of the Spirit". Rudolf Steiner Press, London, GB, 1996

3 Rudolf Steiner: "Geisteswissenschaft und Medizin", 20 Vorträge für Ärzte (1920), Rudolf Steiner Verlag, Dornach, CH 1985.

In English: "Introducing Anthroposophical Medicine" (previously published as: Spiritual Science and Medicine). Twenty lectures to doctors. Dornach 21 March - 9 April 1920, GA 312. Anthroposophic Press, Hudson, NY, USA, 1999.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Table of Content

Structure of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex, APC	13
List of Abbreviations and Symbols	14
Glossary	15
<b>Part I Definitions</b>	16
1. Definition of an anthroposophic medicinal product	17
2. Starting materials; general information	18
2.1. Minerals, rocks and natural waters	19
2.2. Starting material of botanical origin	20
2.3. Starting material of zoological origin	21
2.4. Starting material that can be described chemically	22
2.5. Starting materials that have undergone special treatment	23
2.6. Compositions	24
3. Vehicles and excipients	25
4. Active substances	26
4.1. Starting materials as active substances	26
4.2. Preparations	26
<b>Part II General monographs and specific production methods (Pharmaceutical processes)</b>	27
Introduction: Brief description of pharmaceutical processes used in anthroposophic pharmacy	28
Correlation table of general monographs and related specific production methods	30
1. Special treatment of raw materials	31
1.1. Vegetabilisation methods of substances used for mother tinctures	31
2. Metal preparations	33
2.1. Metal mirrors	34
3. Tinctures and oil extracts	35
3.1. Cold treated mother tinctures and liquid preparations thereof	35
3.2. Tinctures made by maceration with water or ethanol/water	37
3.3. Tinctures made by maceration with glycerol	39
3.4. Liquid preparations made by maceration with oil	41
3.5. Tinctures made by percolations	43
3.6. Buffered aqueous mother tinctures under exclusion of oxidative influence	45
3.7. Fermented tinctures	47
3.8. Tinctures made by digestion (Digestio)	49
3.9. Tinctures made by infusion (Infusum)	51
3.10. Tinctures made by decoction (Decoction)	53
3.11. Oil extracts with heat treatment	55
3.12. Preparations made by distillation	57

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

3.13. Tinctures obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold	59
4. Solid starting materials obtained by heat	62
4.1. Toasted preparations (Tosta)	62
4.2. Carbons (Carbo)	63
4.3. Ashes (Cinis)	65
5. Solid preparations from plants (drying onto a vehicle)	67
5.1. Solid preparations from fresh plants	67
5.2. Solid preparations from plant juices or aqueous extracts	69
6. Liquid solutions	71
7. Compositions	73
8. Potentised Preparations	79
9. Mixtures	82
<b>Part III Dosage forms</b>	<b>84</b>
<b>Part IV Appendices</b>	<b>87</b>
I Lists of Starting Materials	87
Reference List for the Appendices to chapters 2.1. to 2.6.	87
Appendix 2.1. List of minerals, rocks and natural waters	89
Appendix 2.2. List of starting materials of botanical origin	92
Appendix 2.3. List of starting materials of zoological origin	117
Appendix 2.4. Starting materials that can be described chemically	128
Appendix 2.5. Starting material that have undergone special treatment	133
Appendix 2.6. Compositions	136
II Other References to the HAB and to the HPUS	143
List of HAB monographs of substances applied in anthroposophic pharmacy	144
Correspondence list between HAB production methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy and HPUS classes/general pharmacy	147
<b>Index list of terms of parts I, II and III</b>	<b>148</b>

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Structure of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex, APC

**Part I** "Definitions" provides definitions and describes quality aspects as well as parameters related to anthroposophic medicinal products. The different stages incurred in the obtaining of a medicinal product, from the starting material to the dosage form, lead through this part.

**Part II** "General Monographs of specific production methods (Pharmaceutical processes)" contains general monographs concerning the types of preparations/active substances that are prepared by specified procedures. Beneath the relevant general monograph(s), different specific production methods by which a particular type of a starting material can be prepared are either quoted from other pharmacopoeias or a APC production method is set out.

In this way, the relationship between the APC and other pharmacopoeias, as well as the option to define substances through their production methods are outlined.

Schematically the following order is applied:

### General monographs

Definition, Identification, Tests, Assay, Storage, Recommended Designation

### Specific production methods related to the particular general monograph

Ph. Eur.  
Methods

HAB  
Methods

Ph. Fr.  
Methods

B.Hom.P.  
Methods  
1, 2, 3, 4, 5a,  
5b, 6, 8a,12

APC  
Methods

**Part III**, information about dosage forms in anthroposophic pharmacy as well as production methods of specific dosage forms for anthroposophic medicinal products.

### Part IV "Appendices"

In **appendix I** starting materials for the preparation of anthroposophic medicinal products are listed (no excipients and vehicles). The appendices are numbered according to the related chapter in part I: 2.1., 2.2., 2.3., 2.4., 2.5., 2.6.

In **appendix II** other links to the HAB as well as to the HPUS are given:

- the HAB monographs of substances used in anthroposophic pharmacy;
- the correspondence between HAB production methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy and HPUS classes/ general pharmacy.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## List of Abbreviations and Symbols

1 CH	Symbol for the first centesimal potency, see also C1 and 1C
1 DH	Symbol for the first decimal potency, see also D1 and 1X
1C	Symbol for the first centesimal potency, see also 1 CH and C1
1X	Symbol for the first decimal potency, see also 1 DH and D1
APC	Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex
AS	Starting material used as active substance
B.Hom.P.	British Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia
B.P.	British Pharmacopoeia
Br1	Numbering of the production methods of the B.Hom.P.
C1	Symbol for the first centesimal potency, see also 1 CH and 1C
CVD	Chemical Vapour Decomposition
D1	Symbol for the first decimal potency, see also 1 DH and 1X
DAB	Deutsches Arzneibuch (German Pharmacopoeia)
DAC	Deutscher Arzneimittel-Codex (German Codex of Medicinal Products)
EU	European Union
GI	Symbol for mother tinctures prepared by HAB method 41 using glycerol
H 2.2.6	Analytical Method specified in the HAB
HAB	Deutsches Homöopathisches Arzneibuch (German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia)
HPUS	The Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia of the United States
IAAP	International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists
LM	Symbol for potencies diluted by the ratio 1: 50 000
MT	Mother tincture
Ph. Eur.	European Pharmacopoeia
Ph. Fr.	Pharmacopée Française, Xème édition (10 <sup>th</sup> edition of the French Pharmacopoeia), including [monographies de souches] pour préparations homéopathiques (monographs of the stocks for homoeopathic preparations)
Ph. Helv.	Pharmacopoea Helvetica (Swiss Pharmacopoeia)
Q	Symbol for potencies diluted by the ratio 1: 50 000
Rh	Symbol for mother tinctures prepared by HAB methods 21 and 22 (rhythmic procedure)

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Glossary

In this glossary only those terms are referred to, that need extra clarification prior to the definitions given in part I.

Pharmaceutical process	General term for substance transformations at different stages to obtain starting materials for medicinal products or a medicinal product.
Preparation / active substance	A class of processed starting material specified in the monographs of part II.
Production method	A general manufacturing procedure specified in a pharmacopoeia (see e.g. HAB).
Starting material	A substance or a composition that meets a specification and can be used as active substance or can be further processed.
Raw material	Substance which has not undergone any pharmaceutical process and meets a general quality characterisation, e.g. an optical identification.
Vehicle	Vehicles are auxiliary substances which may be used to produce an active substance. Vehicles may be used in the production of mixtures.
Excipient	Excipients are auxiliary substances, which may be used for the production of pharmaceutical dosage forms. Excipients may be used in the production of mixtures.
Composition	Compositions are starting materials and or preparations with or without vehicles that are jointly treated with a pharmaceutical process that will lead to a new active substance that cannot be described as an addition of its ingredients. The ratio for the composing is the anthroposophic understanding of man and nature.

**ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX**

**ANTHROPOSOPHIC  
PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX  
APC**

**PART I**

**Definitions**

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 1. Definition of an anthroposophic medicinal product

### DEFINITION

An anthroposophic medicinal product is conceived, developed and produced in accordance with the anthroposophic knowledge of man, nature, substance and pharmaceutical processing<sup>1</sup>.

The application within anthroposophic medicine results from that knowledge.

An anthroposophic medicinal product can contain one or more active substances (see also Part I, chapter 4).

An anthroposophic medicinal product can fundamentally be employed in every dosage form, including external (topical), internal and parenteral dosage forms (see also part I, chapter 5).

### PRODUCTION

The active substances or dosage forms of anthroposophic medicinal products are produced:

- in accordance with classical homoeopathic or anthroposophic -homoeopathic manufacturing methods as described in the Ph. Eur., HAB, Ph. F., B.Hom.P. (Methods 1, 2, 3, 4, 5a, 5b, 6, 8a, 12)
- in accordance with anthroposophic pharmaceutical codex production methods, i.e. "APC methods"

and/or

- in accordance with anthroposophic manufacturing methods described in the individual monograph.

An anthroposophic medicinal product complies with the relevant specifications/ monographs set out in parts I and II.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

Concerning the *designation* of anthroposophic medicinal products a reference to the APC is recommended.

---

Note:

1 See IAAP brochure: "Basic Information on the Working Principles of Anthroposophic Pharmacy", 2005, see IAAP website [www.iaap.org.uk](http://www.iaap.org.uk)

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 2. Starting materials, general information

Starting materials for the production of anthroposophic medicinal products are:

2.1. Minerals, rocks, including natural waters

2.2. Starting materials of botanical origin

Dried or fresh plants or parts of plants, including algae, fungi and lichens;  
Plant secretions, juices, extracts, oleoresins, essential oils or distillation products.

2.3. Starting materials of zoological origin

Whole animals, organs, parts of organs dried or fresh;  
Animal secretions, extracts, blood products, calcareous products.

2.4. Starting materials that can be described chemically

2.5. Starting materials that have undergone special treatment

-

2.6. Compositions

Starting materials for the production of anthroposophic medicinal products comply with any relevant monograph in the European Pharmacopoeia or in the absence thereof, with the relevant monographs in national pharmacopoeias used in the Member States, or in absence thereof with the individual monograph.

Starting materials can be the active substances themselves or can be processed into preparations (see also Part I, chapter 4).

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 2.1. Minerals, rocks, including natural waters

Minerals are solid, crystalline components of natural origin belonging to the earth's crust and other celestial bodies. A mineral has a defined crystal system and crystal class. Minerals are chemically and physically homogeneous to a significant extent. In reality, however, there are always deviations from the theoretical mineral formula. Many minerals may show differences in their colours. Form and habitus may be significantly different within the same type.

Rocks are composed of one or more minerals having a geological definition and distribution in their natural deposit with a certain statistical homogeneity.

Pieces that will be used for production should be big enough to allow mineralogical identification. If a powdered mineral is used, adequate documentation should ensure the quality and natural origin. In fact pieces used for production must be free from visible foreign matter. They have not undergone any unwanted mechanical or chemical treatment: in particular any chemical reaction, colouring, varnishing, heating and artificial radiation must be excluded. The amount of foreign matter accepted after chemical analysis is specified in the respective monograph.

Natural waters can come from a natural source (e.g. Levico), from the sea (e.g. aqua maris) or from mineral cavities (e.g. agate water).

List of minerals, rocks, including natural waters: see part IV, appendix 2.1.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 2.2. Starting material of botanical origin

Starting materials of botanical origin are:

- Dried or fresh plants or parts of plants, including algae, fungi and lichens;
- Plant secretions, juices, extracts, oleoresins, essential oils or distillation products.

Fresh plants should be used shortly after harvest. If this is not possible, the quality is guaranteed by appropriate measures, e.g. freezing.

If material from cultivated plants is used preference should be made for materials from plants cultivated by biodynamic cultivation ("Demeter" certified) or by other certified organic cultivation methods in accordance to the relevant European regulations ruling organic agricultural products (see also Council Directive (EEC) n° 2092/91).

If wild plants are harvested protection of species according to relevant regulations is granted and special care is taken of the eco-system concerned.

Plants or parts of plants are, as far as possible, free from impurities such as soil, dust, dirt and other contaminants such as fungal, insect and other animal contaminations. They are not decayed.

Harvested plants or the mother tinctures made thereof are analysed for content of heavy metals and pesticides.

The range and frequency of this testing can occur according to a monitoring plan based on risk assessment.

Unless otherwise stated, the collecting or harvesting times are generally:

Whole plants with underground parts and plants without underground parts	at flowering time
Leaves and shoots	when fully developed
Flowers	shortly after opening
Bark	throughout the year
Underground parts of annual plants	at seed ripening time
Underground parts of biennial and perennial plants	in spring
Fruits and seeds	at the time of ripening
Fungi	when the fruiting bodies are fully developed

Starting materials of botanical origin see part IV, appendix 2.2.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 2.3. Starting materials of zoological origin

Starting materials of zoological origin are:

- Whole animals, organs, parts of organs dried or fresh;
- Animal secretions, extracts, blood products, calcareous products.

Lower animals as well as warm-blooded animals are used.

Animal husbandry and keeping must be adequate for the animal species (see also Council Directive (EEC) n° 2092/91). In particular in the case of warm-blooded species animals from well-monitored "Demeter" or biodynamic herds are preferentially used.

The starting materials of zoological origin must meet the requirements of the European and/ or relevant national pharmacopoeias regarding the preparation of medicinal products from materials of animal origin and with EU directives and/or national guidelines of the appropriate regulatory authorities.

In particular the Ph. Eur. monographs on TSE safety (Ph.Eur. 50208), viral safety (Ph. Eur. 50107) apply.

Animals must be healthy and in good hygienic condition. The intervals given in legislation for the administration of drugs to animals must be observed before the animals are used.

Health requirements, animal keeping, protection of species and processing of animals must comply with the relevant guidelines of responsible national authorities and those of the European Union, where applicable.

List of starting materials of zoological origin see part IV, appendix 2.3.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 2.4. Starting materials that can be described chemically

Starting materials that can be described chemically are inorganic and organic substances. Organic substances are generally of natural origin, e.g. purified fractions.

Preference should be made for clearly traceable substances, that comply with the quality standards under 2.1, 2.2., 2.3.

List of starting materials that can be described chemically see part IV, appendix 2.4.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 2.5. Starting materials that have undergone special treatment

Starting materials that have undergone a special treatment are: e.g. plants, parts of plants cultivated by special treatment (see part II, chapter 1.1. Vegetabilisation methods of substances used for mother tinctures).

List of starting materials that have undergone special treatment see part IV appendix 2.5.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 2.6. Compositions

Different starting materials described in 2.1., 2.2., 2.3., 2.4., 2.5 undergo one or more pharmaceutical processes that will lead to a substance that cannot be described as an addition of its ingredients. The rationale for the synthesis is an anthroposophic formula, in accordance with the anthroposophic understanding of man and nature<sup>2</sup>.

List of compositions see part IV, appendix 2.6.

---

Note:

2 As an example see: "Biodoron/Kephalodoron", in Persephone, Dr. M. Kohlhase editor; publisher Verlag am Goetheanum, Dornach, CH, 1998.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3. Vehicles and excipients

Vehicles are auxiliary substances, which may be used for the production of active substances (e.g. ethanol to obtain an extract or lactose monohydrate to obtain a potentised preparation). Vehicles are used also in the production of mixtures (see part II, chapter 9).

Excipients are auxiliary substances, which may be used for the production of the pharmaceutical dosage forms (e.g. NaCl to obtain an isotonic solution for parenteral preparations). Excipients are used also in the production of mixtures (see part II, chapter 9).

Vehicles and excipients used in the manufacture of anthroposophic medicinal products comply with the relevant requirements of the European Pharmacopoeia or of the national pharmacopoeias used in the EU Member States.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 4. Active substances

Active substances can be starting materials themselves or preparations.

### 4.1. Starting materials

Starting materials used as active substances are marked with „AS“(active substance) in the starting material lists (part IV, appendices 2.1., 2.2., 2.3., 2.4., 2.5., 2.6.).

Starting material used directly as active substances may be the final dosage form, e.g. a herbal tea.

### 4.2. Preparations

Preparations are obtained from one or more starting materials.

Preparations comply with the specifications described in part II or in the individual monograph. Preparations can be the final dosage form or can be processed further, e.g. to obtain mixtures.

**ANTHROPOSOPHIC  
PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX  
APC**

**PART II**

**General monographs and  
specific production methods  
(Pharmaceutical processes)**

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Introduction: Brief description of the main pharmaceutical processes applied in anthroposophic pharmacy

Several pharmaceutical processes are described in existing homoeopathic pharmacopoeias as "production methods". These homoeopathic pharmacopoeial production methods can be seen as examples of the general anthroposophic pharmaceutical principle described in the general APC monographs of part II.

In anthroposophic pharmacy the treatment of the raw materials can already be part of the pharmaceutical processing, e.g. a plant can be cultivated under treatment with a metal or mineral preparation.

Metals can either be used as a concentrated starting material or undergo a pharmaceutical process depending on the rationale of the anthroposophic therapeutics.

Preparations can be differentiated according to the thermal condition or treatment in the pharmaceutical process. Hereby follows a scheme concerning the related pharmaceutical processes applied to plant material and the main sphere of action.

### Treatments in liquid phase

Pharmaceutical process	Heat /cold degree	Starting material	Main sphere of therapeutic action <sup>1,2</sup>
Cold maceration	2-8 °C	fresh or dried plants, all parts	System of nerves and senses throughout the whole organism
Maceration	ca. 15-20 °C	fresh plants, all parts	system of nerves and senses throughout the whole organism
Rhythmic processing	4 / 37 °C	fresh plants, all parts	rhythmic system
digestion	37 °C	fresh plants, leaves, flowers	rhythmic system, circulation
Infusion	60-90 °C	dried leaves, flowers	metabolic system, any type of gland
Decoction	ca 100 °C	dried roots, barks, seeds	metabolic system, digestive tract (stomach, intestine)
Distillation	steam, ca 100 °C	fresh or dried plants, all parts	metabolic system, digestion

### Treatments in dry phase

Pharmaceutical process	Heat degree	Starting material	Main sphere of therapeutic action <sup>1,2</sup>
Toasting	170-250 °C	dried plants, all parts, dried zoological starting material	metabolic system, digestion (liver)
Carbonisation	above 200 °C	dried plants, all parts, zoological starting material	metabolic system, kidney organisation
Ash process	500-700 °C	dried plants, all parts, zoological starting material	region of the lungs (respiration)

A crucially important pharmaceutical process is potentisation:

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Potentised preparations are gradually diluted substances, whereby at each diluting step a rhythmic succussion (liquid potencies) or trituration (solid potencies) has been carried out. During this process the surface of the vehicle and the substance to be potentised are expanded and the mixing is thorough. The potentising time differs for solid and liquid potentised preparations. Astronomical aspects may be considered (e.g. solar or lunar eclipse). Anthroposophic pharmacy mainly uses decimal attenuations. For co-potentised preparations the ratio between active substances to vehicle may vary, differing from 1:10 for homoeopathic co-potentising methods (see also part II, "Potentised Preparations").

---

## Notes

1 General scheme for the correlation between spheres of therapeutic action/ degree of potentisation:

Mother tincture - D10	Metabolic system
D11-D20	Rhythmic system
>D20	System of nerves and senses

See also: H. M. Schramm, Heilmittel-Fibel zur anthroposophischen Medizin, 2nd edition, Novalis Verlag, Schaffhausen, 1997, p.68

2 IAAP brochure: "Basic Information on the Working Principles of Anthroposophic Pharmacy", 2005, see IAAP website [www.iaap.org.uk](http://www.iaap.org.uk)

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Correlation table of general monographs - related specific production methods

Note: anthroposophic medicinal products may also be manufactured in accordance to individual specifications or monographs, see also Part I, chapter 1.

General monograph	Related specific production method
1. Special treatment of raw materials	
1.1. Vegetabilisation methods of substances used for mother tinctures	B.Hom.P. Br1; APC 1.1.1.; APC 1.1.2.
2. Metal preparations	
2.1. Metal mirrors	APC 2.1.1; APC 2.1.2.; APC 2.1.3.; APC 2.1.4.
3. Tinctures and oil extracts	
3.1. Cold treated mother tinctures and liquid preparations thereof	HAB 38
3.2. Tinctures made by maceration with water or ethanol/water	Ph. Eur.( 2371) 1-4; HAB 1-4; HAB 12b, c, m, n, o; HAB 49
3.3. Tinctures made by maceration with glycerol	HAB 41; HAB 42; Ph. Fr. Glycerol macerations
3.4. Liquid preparations made by maceration with oil	APC 3.4.1.
3.5. Tinctures made by percolations	Ph. Eur.( 2371) 4; HAB 4; Ph. Fr. MT from vegetable origin; Ph. Fr. MT from animal origin
3.6. Buffered aqueous mother tinctures under exclusion of oxidative influence	HAB 32
3.7. Fermented tinctures	HAB 53; APC 3.7.1.
3.8. Tinctures made by digestion (Digestio)	APC 3.8.1.
3.9. Tinctures made by infusion (Infusum)	HAB 20; HAB 24a; APC 3.9.1.; APC 3.9.2.
3.10. Tinctures made by decoction (Decoction)	HAB 12k, l; HAB 19; HAB 23; APC 3.10.1.
3.11. Oil extracts with heat treatment	HAB 12d-g; HAB 57
3.12. Preparations made by distillation	HAB 52
3.13. Tinctures obtained with rhythmic application of heat and cold	HAB 21-22; HAB 33-37; HAB 51; APC 3.13.1.; APC 3.13.2.
4. Solid starting materials obtained by heat	
4.1. Toasted preparations (Tosta)	
4.2. Carbons (Carbo)	B.Hom.P. Br4
4.3. Ashes (Cinis)	B.Hom.P. Br3
5. Solid preparations from plants (drying onto a vehicle)	
5.1. Solid preparations from fresh plants	APC 5.1.1.
5.2. Solid preparations from liquid extracts/ plant juices	APC 5.2.1.; APC 5.2.2; APC 5.2.3
6. Liquid solutions	HAB 5
7. Compositions	APC 7.2.1.
8. Potentised Preparations	HAB 6-8; HAB 12j; HAB 17; B.Hom.P. Br5-6; APC 8.1.1.; APC 8.1.2.; APC 8.2.1.; APC 8.2.2 Potentising specifications in: Ph. Eur. (2371) 1-4; HAB 5, 11, 15, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 32, 33-38, 39a, 39b, 40-42, 45, 51, 53; APC Methods
9. Mixtures	HAB 12; HAB 16

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 1. SPECIAL TREATMENTS OF RAW MATERIALS

In anthroposophic pharmacy the treatment of the raw materials can already be part of the pharmaceutical processing, e.g. a plant can be cultivated under treatment with a metal or mineral preparation.

---

### 1.1. Vegetabilisation methods of substances used for mother tinctures

#### DEFINITION

Vegetabilisation of substances is a potentising process taking place through nature. The potentising process is carried out with plants and goes through three vegetation periods. The substance and appropriate plant are chosen in accordance with the rationale of anthroposophic understanding of man and nature.

Plants are treated in the first vegetation period with either a diluted metal salt or a mineral. Compost made from this plant is used to treat plants of the second vegetation period. The plants of the second vegetation period are used as compost to treat the third vegetation period. Mother tinctures are made from the plant of the third vegetation period.

#### IDENTIFICATION, TESTS, ASSAY

According to the relevant tincture (See Part II, chapters under 3.)

#### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex
- the fertilised plant,
- the substance used,
- the designation "cultum", "cultum".

Example: Tabacum Cupro cultum; Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## **Specific pharmacopoeia/APC production methods to produce vegetabilised substances used for mother tinctures**

B.Hom.P. Method Br1

### **APC Method 1.1.1. Vegetabilisation of substances of metallic origin (“vegetabilised metals”)**

For the vegetabilisation of substances of metallic origin plants are treated with a diluted metal substance.

The process of treatment goes over three growing seasons:

1<sup>st</sup> growing season:

The seeds or the young plants are sown or planted in soil, which has been treated with a diluted preparation of the concerned metal substance. The plants are composted and used to treat the second generation.

2<sup>nd</sup> growing season:

The compost of the first generation is added to soil that is sown with seeds of untreated plants or in which untreated plants are planted. The second generation is also grown to maturity. Compost is made from this fully developed generation.

3<sup>rd</sup> growing season:

The plants of the second generation as compost are added to soil that is sown with seeds of untreated plants or in which untreated plants are planted. The third generation is also grown to maturity. During the third growing season, the plants are harvested and then processed further into a mother tincture.

### **APC Method 1.1.2. Vegetabilisation of silica**

For the vegetabilisation of Silicea plants are treated with an appropriate mineral containing silica.

The process of fertilisation goes over three growing seasons:

1<sup>st</sup> growing season:

The seeds or the young plants are sown or planted in soil, which has been treated with a diluted preparation of the concerned mineral containing silica. The plants are used to treat the second generation.

2<sup>nd</sup> growing season:

The compost of the first generation is added to soil that is sown with seeds of untreated plants or in which untreated plants are planted. The second generation is also grown to maturity. Compost is made from this fully developed generation.

3<sup>rd</sup> growing season:

The plants of the second generation as compost are added to soil that is sown with seeds of untreated plants or in which untreated plants are planted. The third generation is also grown to maturity. During the third growing season, the plants are harvested and then processed further into a mother tincture.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 2. METAL PREPARATIONS

Metals can either be used as a concentrated starting material or undergo a pharmaceutical process depending on the rationale of the anthroposophic therapeutics.

---

### 2.1. Metal mirrors

#### DEFINITION

By producing metal mirrors the metal is transformed through different states of aggregation.

The metals or metal salts can be brought through a liquid state (melted or as solution), gas state or plasmatic state to be obtained again in solid state as the pure metal.  
Metal mirrors are deposits of metals in reduced state onto a surface by a specific method of production  
The metal can be removed from the surface.

Metal mirrors may be potentised according to HAB methods 6 and 48.

The following analytical tests are done always for metal used to perform the mirror. Only by the reduction of metal salts the metal mirror obtained is tested itself as follows.

#### IDENTIFICATION

At least one suitable identification test is carried out.

#### TESTS

see the individual monograph

#### ASSAY

Required content according to the individual monograph.

#### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container.

#### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the metal used,
- the designation "metallicum praeparatum" or in the case of metal mirror foil the name of the metal followed of the word "foil".

Example: Argentum metallicum praeparatum; Cuprum foil

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to prepare metal mirrors

B.Hom.P. Method Br2

### APC Method 2.1.1. (Metal mirrors obtained by distillation)

Metal mirrors prepared by distillation are obtained from the pure metal. The pure metal is heated in appropriate equipment under vacuum until it evaporates. The metal vapour condenses onto the surface of the cooler parts of the distillation equipment, producing a metal mirror. The metal mirror is removed from the surface.

### APC Method 2.1.2. (Metal mirrors obtained by Chemical Vapour Decomposition, CVD)

Metal mirrors prepared by chemical vapour decomposition are obtained from a volatile metal compound. A volatile metal compound is distilled under vacuum in appropriate equipment. The vapour is further heated. Under decomposition of the metal compound, the pure metal condenses onto the surface of the cooler parts of the distillation equipment, producing a metal mirror. The metal mirror is removed from the surface.

### APC Method 2.1.3. (Metal mirrors obtained by reduction)

Metal mirrors prepared by reduction are obtained from an appropriate metal salt. To a solution of a metal salt an appropriate reducing agent and adjuvants are added. The pure metal precipitates onto the surface of the reaction vessel producing the metal mirror. The metal mirror is removed from the surface, filtered from the solution, washed with purified water and ethanol and dried.

### APC Method 2.1.4. (Metal mirror foil)

To produce a metal mirror foil a process known as sputtering is used. In this vapour phase technique there is no melting of the metal. The sputtering process is most commonly used for thin-film deposition of many different metals. Ions impacting on the target can liberate sputtered neutrals. A metal target is put under the effect of a magnetron. A magnetron is comprised of a cathode (electron source) an anode (electron collector) and a combined electric and magnetic field. Vacuum conditions are generated and an inert gas is used as medium. The process begins as a result of a collision and momentum transfer from an incoming particle which impacts the inert gas molecules. Ions of the inert gas impact then the surface of the metal and the result is an ejection of metal atoms from the surface. The electric field leads to an ionisation of the metal which goes into a plasma aggregation state and condensates as a metal mirror on the substrate, in this case a plastic foil. After this process the metal mirror foil is stitched to a special cotton tissue directly over the metal mirror.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3. TINCTURES AND OIL EXTRACTS

Tinctures and oil extracts are obtained from starting materials from botanical or zoological origin by pharmaceutical processes under cold condition (2-8 °C), at ambient temperature (15-25 °C), with heat treatment at different temperatures, by rhythmic application of heat and cold, by fermentation as well as by distillation. If applicable, vehicles e.g. water, ethanol, water/ethanol mixtures, glycerol, oils may be used.

---

### 3.1. Cold treated mother tinctures and liquid preparations thereof

#### DEFINITION

Cold treated mother tinctures are obtained from fresh (frozen) or dried vegetable matter. The maceration is carried out at a temperature of 2-8 °C using purified water, water for injections or isotonic solution.

If necessary, the matter to be extracted is reduced to pieces of suitable size. The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the raw material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container, where applicable protected from light for an appropriate time at least 7 days. Shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter.

#### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

#### TESTS

**pH** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.2.3.). Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Dry residue** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.8.16. or *H* 2.2.6.). The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.2.5.). Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Methanol and 2-propanol** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.9.11.). Maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia.

#### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

#### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures obtained under cold conditions (2-8 °C)

HAB Method 38

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3.2. Tinctures made by macerations with water or ethanol/water

### DEFINITION

Tinctures made by maceration with water or ethanol / water are liquids and are obtained from fresh (frozen) or dried vegetable or animal matter. The maceration is carried out at a temperature not above 25 °C by using ethanol of a suitable concentration or purified water.

If necessary, the matter to be extracted is reduced to pieces of suitable size; animals are processed immediately after killing. The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the raw material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container at the required temperature, where applicable protected from light for an appropriate time. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.

Adjustment of the constituents. Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another macerate of the vegetable or animal starting material used. Adjustment of content by concentration is carried out using suitable methods, generally under reduced pressure.

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

### TESTS

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.5.*). Where applicable, the macerate complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Ethanol content** (*Ph. Eur. 2.9.10.*). Where applicable, the ethanol content complies with that prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Methanol and 2-propanol** (*Ph. Eur. 2.9.11.*). Maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia.

**Dry residue** (*Ph. Eur. 2.8.16. or H 2.2.6.*). The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh vegetable or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures made by macerations with water or ethanol/water

Ph. Eur. Methods of preparation of homoeopathic stocks and potentisation (2371)

Methods 1  
Methods 2  
Methods 3  
Methods 4

HAB Methods 1  
Methods 2  
Methods 3  
Methods 4  
Methods 12b, c, m, n, o  
Method 49

Ph. Fr. Method Mother tinctures from drugs of vegetable origin

Ph. Fr. Method Mother tincture from drugs of animal origin

### APC Method 3.2.1. (related to Ph. Eur. 2371, Method 4a)

Prepare mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.2.1. using the maceration methods given in the Ph. Eur. monograph "Extracts". Use 1 part of dried plant or parts of plants to 20 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration (see *HAB H.5.3*), unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph.

If adjustment to a given concentration is necessary, calculate the amount of ethanol required to obtain the concentration specified or used for production from equation (1) of HAB Method 1. Mix the calculated amount of ethanol with the filtrate. Allow to stand for not less than 5 days at a temperature not exceeding 20 °C, then filter if necessary.

Potentisation

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from  
2 part of the mother tincture and  
8 parts of ethanol of the same concentration,

the 3rd decimal dilution (D3) from  
1 part of 2nd decimal dilution and  
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

Unless a different ethanol concentration is specified, use ethanol 30per cent (*m/m*) and then 15 per cent (*m/m*) for subsequent dilutions from the D4 onwards and proceed accordingly.

### APC Method 3.2.2. (related to HAB Method 12a)

Preparations according to APC Method 3.2.2. are tinctures for external use. They are prepared as follows: maceration of dried plants or parts of plants with ethanol in a ratio of 1:10 (in analogy to Ph. Eur. 2371, Method 4a and HAB Methods 4a or 19f or 20).

Glycerol may be added up to 10 per cent.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3.3. Tinctures made by maceration with glycerol

### DEFINITION

Tinctures made by maceration with glycerol are liquids and are obtained from fresh (frozen) or dried vegetable or animal matter. The maceration is carried out at the required temperature (not above 25 °C) by using glycerol of a suitable concentration or a glycerol solution containing sodium chloride.

Lower animals are killed immediately before processing, the parts of warm-blooded animals are processed immediately after killing. Killing is carried out with respect for the animal suffering. If necessary, the matter to be extracted is reduced to pieces of suitable size. The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the raw material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container at a temperature not above 25 °C, protected from light for the appropriate time. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.

Adjustment of the constituents: Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another macerate of the vegetable or animal starting material used. Adjustment of content by concentration is carried out using suitable methods, generally under reduced pressure.

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic or electrophoretic (animal matter) identification test is carried out.

### TESTS

**Conductivity** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.2.38.). Where applicable, the macerate complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.2.5.). The macerate complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Microbiological examination** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.6.12., 2.6.13.). Where applicable, the macerate complies with the limits prescribed.

**Microbiological quality** (*Ph. Eur.* 5.1.4.). Category 3A or 3B respectively according to the individual monograph.

### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh vegetable or animal matter used,
- the glycerol content of the solvent used for the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to macerate.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

**Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures made by maceration with glycerol**

HAB Methods 41

HAB Methods 42

Ph. Fr. Method Glycerol macerations

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3.4. Liquid preparations made by maceration with oil

### DEFINITION

Liquid preparations made by maceration with oil are of liquid consistency and obtained from fresh (frozen) or dried vegetable or animal matter. The maceration is carried out at the required temperature (not above 25 °C) mostly by using arachis oil or olive oil.

If necessary, the matter to be extracted is reduced to pieces of suitable size. When animal matter is used, lower animals are killed immediately before processing, the parts of warm-blooded animals being processed immediately after killing. Killing is carried out with respect for the animal suffering. The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the raw material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container at the required temperature, protected from light for the appropriate time. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.

Adjustment of the constituents: Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another macerate of the vegetable or animal starting material used.

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

### TESTS

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.5.*). The oil extract complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Refractive index** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.6.*). The oil extract complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Peroxide value** (*Ph. Eur. 2.5.5.*). Where applicable, the oil extract complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh vegetable or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the solvent used for the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

**Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce liquid preparations made by maceration with oil**

## **APC Method 3.4.1.**

Preparations made according to APC Method 3.4.1. are oil extracts for external use prepared from 1 part of lower animals and 10 parts of arachis oil, refined (Ph. Eur.) as follows:

Transfer animals immediately to the oil for killing, container and oil having been previously weighed separately. Calculate the weight of the animals. After filtration mince the animals. Reunify the minced animals with the filtrate and make up to the required weight with oil. Mix thoroughly and filter again.

Alternatively the animals are killed with CO<sub>2</sub>. After killing the animals are minced and mixed thoroughly with 10 parts of arachis oil, refined (Ph. Eur.). Protect the mixture from light. Filter.

In both ways of extraction the extraction time should not exceed 8 hours.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3.5. Tinctures made by percolation

### DEFINITION

Tinctures made by percolation are of liquid consistency and prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried vegetable matter. The percolation is carried out at room temperature using ethanol of suitable concentration or purified water.

If necessary, reduce the matter to be extracted to pieces of suitable size. Mix thoroughly with a portion of the prescribed extraction solvent and allow to stand for an appropriate time. Transfer to a percolator and allow the percolate to flow slowly making sure that the matter to be extracted is always covered with the remaining extraction solvent. The residue may be pressed out and the expressed liquid combined with the percolate.

Adjustment of the constituents. Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another percolate of the vegetable matter used for the preparation.

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

### TESTS

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.5.*). Where applicable, the tincture complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Dry residue** (*Ph. Eur. 2.8.16. or H 2.2.6.*). The tincture complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Methanol and 2-propanol** (*Ph. Eur. 2.9.11.*). Maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia.

### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the tincture,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to tincture.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produced tinctures made by percolation

Ph. Eur. Methods of preparation of homoeopathic stocks and potentisation (2371), Methods 4

HAB Methods 4

Ph. Fr. Method Mother tinctures from drugs of vegetable origin

Ph. Fr. Method Mother tincture from drugs of animal origin

### APC Method 3.5.1. (related to Ph. Eur. 2371, Method 4a)

Prepare mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.5.1. using the percolation methods given in the Ph. Eur. monograph "Extracts". Use 1 part of dried plant or parts of plants to 20 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration (see *HAB H.5.3*), unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph. If adjustment to a given concentration is necessary, calculate the amount of ethanol required to obtain the concentration specified or used for production from equation (1) of HAB Method 1. Mix the calculated amount of ethanol with the filtrate. Allow to stand for not less than 5 days at a temperature not exceeding 20 °C, then filter if necessary.

#### Potentisation

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from  
2 part of the mother tincture and  
8 parts of ethanol of the same concentration,

the 3rd decimal dilution (D3) from  
1 part of 2nd decimal dilution and  
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

Unless a different ethanol concentration is specified, use ethanol 43 per cent (*m/m*) for subsequent dilutions from the D4 onwards and proceed accordingly.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3.6. Buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence

### DEFINITION

Buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence are produced by exhaustive extraction of fresh (frozen) plants or parts of plants under the exclusion of atmospheric oxygen with a buffer.

If the fresh plant material is not processed immediately, it must be stored in liquid nitrogen. The loss on drying (*H 2.8.1*) must be determined before it is placed in liquid nitrogen.

From 1 part of the plant material 50 parts of mother tincture is generally produced. The mother tincture corresponds to the 2<sup>nd</sup> decimal dilution (mother tincture = D2).

At first add a defined amount of ascorbate phosphate buffer solution to the plant material and then finely reduce this mixture to a slurry. Under further size reduction, add a sufficient quantity of ascorbate phosphate buffer solution to optimise extraction. Express, filter and adjust to the required volume with ascorbate phosphate buffer solution.

According to the individual monograph the production of the mother tincture may require the addition of a second extract from material of the same plant species harvested at a different season. In this case mix the extracts in an appropriate apparatus to a composition (see Chapter 7) and then dilute in a defined proportion with ascorbate phosphate buffer solution. This composition is the mother tincture (=D2).

Potentiation is generally carried out according to HAB Method 32.

Buffered aqueous mother tinctures and their liquid dilutions are exclusively intended for parenteral dosage forms. Before they are processed to finished products, the mother tincture (D2) and the liquid dilution D3 must be stored for at least 6 weeks up to 1 year. Any eventual sediment must be excluded from the further processing. From the 4<sup>th</sup> decimal dilution (=D4) onwards, process immediately.

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

### TESTS

**Loss on drying** (*H 2.8.1*). Loss on drying of the residue after filtration.

**Sterility** (*Ph. Eur. 2.6.1*). If buffered aqueous mother tinctures and their liquid dilutions are stored before further processing, they must comply with the test "Sterility" of the European Pharmacopoeia.

**Proportion of original extracts**: Where applicable, the proportion of both extracts in the composition is tested comparing two different substances in both starting extracts e.g. by HPLC.

**Methanol and 2-propanol** (*Ph. Eur. 2.9.11*). Maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia.

### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed, airtight container.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable matter used,
- the amount of vegetable matter used and the amount of vegetable matter dissolved.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

**Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence**

HAB Method 32

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3.7. Fermented tinctures

### DEFINITION

Fermented tinctures are aqueous preparations from fresh (frozen) or dried vegetable matter obtained by fermentation at room temperature.

If necessary, reduce the vegetable matter to pieces of suitable size. Add purified water according to the individual monograph and mix thoroughly. If stated in the individual monograph add the prescribed fermenting agent. Allow to stand at room temperature for the time prescribed in the individual monograph protected from air, from light and, if necessary, from oxidation. Hereafter express.

Adjustment of the constituents. Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out with purified water or add purified water to the residue and express again.

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

### TESTS

**pH** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.2.3.). The tincture complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.2.5.). The tincture complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Dry residue** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.8.16. or *H* 2.2.6.). The tincture complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Methanol and 2-propanol** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.9.11.). maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia.

### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the dried vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce fermented preparations

HAB Method 53

### **APC Method 3.7.1. (see also Compositions 7.2.1.)**

Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.7.1. are produced from fresh plants or parts of plants following the procedure given below.

Finely mince the plants or parts of plants and mix 1 part of the plant mass with 1 part of purified water. Leave to ferment at 20 to 24°C with the exclusion of air, ending the fermentation when the pH of the fermentation liquid has fallen to between 4 and 5. Then express and weigh the expressed liquid. The weight of the expressed liquid is equal to 2 parts and is mixed with 1 part of a mixture of 0.95 parts of alcohol 94 per cent (*m/m*) and 0.05 parts of purified water.

This tincture is stored and can together with another tincture of the same plant undergo a special pharmaceutical process leading to a composition.

This procedure is followed for plants harvested in the summer and for plants of the same species, harvested in the winter.

The mother tincture is produced by composing equal parts of the two tinctures.

### Potentiation

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from  
3 parts of the mother tincture and  
7 parts of alcohol 30 per cent (*m/m*),  
the 2nd decimal dilution (D2) from  
1 part of the 1st decimal dilution and  
9 parts of alcohol 15 per cent (*m/m*).  
Subsequent dilutions are produced accordingly.

### Recommended designation

Preparations according to APC Method 3.7.1. carry the designation „ferm APC 3.7.1.“.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3.8. Tinctures made by digestion (Digestio)

### DEFINITION

Tinctures made by digestion are liquids prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried vegetable matter with an additional heat treatment usually at 37 °C. The digestion is carried out by using ethanol of a suitable concentration or purified water.

If necessary, the matter to be extracted is reduced to pieces of suitable size. The quantity of extraction liquid is added according to the individual monograph. Mix thoroughly and warm to 37 °C. Then keep at 37 °C in a covered container. Allow to stand at this temperature for the time prescribed in the individual monograph, stirring occasionally. After cooling, allow to stand at room temperature in a well-closed container, protected from light for the time described in the individual monograph. Add ethanol of appropriate percentage if prescribed. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.

Adjustment of the constituents. Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out by dilution, either with the same liquid used for the digestion or with another digestion of the same raw material. Adjustment of content by concentration is carried out carefully and generally under vacuum.

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

### TESTS

**pH** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.2.3.). Where applicable the tincture complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.2.5.). The tincture complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Dry residue** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.8.16. or *H* 2.2.6.). The tincture complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Methanol and 2-propanol** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.9.11.). maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia.

### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the tincture,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to tincture,
- the designation "Digestio" or "ethanol. Digestio" if ethanol is used.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures made by digestion

HAB Methods 18  
HAB Method 24b

### **APC Method 3.8.1.**

Preparations according to APC Method 3.8.1. are of liquid consistency and obtained from fresh plants obtained with purified water as follows:

Reduce the plants or part of plants to a suitable size unless otherwise prescribed in the monograph. The amount of vegetable matter and purified water are defined by the monograph. Introduce the amount of purified water into a round-bottomed flask, place in a water bath and heat up to 50 °C. Add the vegetable matter whereby the flask should be a half to three quarters full, mix thoroughly. Close the flask hermetically. Keep the mixture at 50 °C for 6 hours. Allow to cool to 37 °C in the course of 24 hours and maintain this temperature for 72 hours with occasional stirring. Allow to cool. If necessary add the amount of ethanol 94 per cent (*m/m*) prescribed in the monograph then express and filter.

Preparations according to APC Method 3.8.1 which are obtained without ethanol, are generally processed immediately to solid preparations (see monograph "Solid preparations of fresh plants, plant juices and aqueous extracts").

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3.9. Tinctures made by infusion (Infusum)

### DEFINITION

Tinctures made by infusion are of liquid consistency and prepared from adequately prepared dried plant material by adding boiling purified water. If ethanol (of the prescribed concentration) is used, the quantities of ethanol and purified water are added separately.

If necessary, the plant material is reduced to pieces of suitable size. Boiling purified water is used for extraction. If ethanol of suitable concentration is used, the quantity of ethanol is either used prior to extraction for moistening the dried plant material for the time prescribed or added to the mixture after cooling. Allow to stand in a well-closed container for the time prescribed. If purified water is used as solvent, it is also used for moistening and to make up the final mass if prescribed. Express and filter, if necessary. If purified water is used as solvent the preparation is processed further immediately.

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

### TESTS

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.5.*). The tincture complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Dry residue** (*Ph. Eur. 2.8.16. or H 2.2.6.*). The tincture complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Sterility** (*Ph. Eur. 2.6.1.*): Applicable only if the Infusion is a stored aqueous mother tincture.

**Methanol and 2-propanol** (*Ph. Eur. 2.9.11.*). Maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia.

### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light, if the tincture contains ethanol.

If aqueous tinctures made by infusion are stored they must meet the requirements of Sterility (*Ph Eur. 2.6.1.*).

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the tincture,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to tincture,
- the designation "Infusum" or "ethanol. Infusum", if ethanol is used.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures made by infusion

HAB Method 20  
HAB Method 24a

### **APC Method 3.9.1. (related to HAB Method 20)**

Mother tinctures made according to APC Method 3.9.1. are produced from dried plants or parts of plants, using 1 part of the plant material and 10 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration as follows:

Add the amounts of ethanol and purified water required to obtain the prescribed ethanol concentration separately.

To the minced plant material add the total amount of boiling purified water, cover and allow to stand until room temperature for not more than 12 h. Compensate any water loss by evaporation and add the required amount of ethanol. Allow to stand in a well-closed container for 24 - 36 h, stirring occasionally. Express and filter.

#### Potentiation

The mother tincture is identical with the 1st decimal dilution ( $\emptyset = D1$ ).

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from  
1 part of the mother tincture and  
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

Use the same method to produce further decimal dilutions, progressively reducing the ethanol concentration in the sequence 94 – 86 – 73 – 62 – 43 – 30 – 15 per cent (*m/m*) until the 15 per cent level is reached.

### **APC Method 3.9.2. (related to HAB Method 20)**

Mother tinctures made according to APC Method 3.9.2. are produced from dried plants or parts of plants, using 1 part of the plant material and 10 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration as follows:

Add the amounts of ethanol and purified water required to obtain the prescribed ethanol concentration separately.

To the minced plant material add the total amount of boiling purified water, cover and allow to stand until cold at 2 - 8 °C for not more than 18 h. Compensate any water loss by evaporation and add the required amount of ethanol. Allow to stand in a well-closed container for 24 - 36 h, stirring once during this period. Express and filter.

#### Potentiation

The mother tincture is identical with the 1st decimal dilution ( $\emptyset = D1$ ).

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from  
1 part of the mother tincture and  
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

Use the same method to produce further decimal dilutions, progressively reducing the ethanol concentration in the sequence 43 - 30 - 15% (*m/m*) until the 15 per cent level is reached.

#### Recommended designation

Preparations made according to APC Method 3.9.2. carry the designation "ethanol. stab. infusum". The same applies to preparations made from them.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3.10. Tinctures made by decoction (Decoction)

### DEFINITION

Tinctures made by decoction are of liquid consistency and prepared from fresh or dried vegetable matter that have been allowed to boil usually with ethanol of a suitable concentration or purified water or glycerol.

If necessary, reduce the vegetable matter to pieces of suitable size, add the prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph and mix thoroughly. Heat up until boiling, if necessary under reflux and allow to boil for the time prescribed, usually 30 min. After cooling allow to stand in a well-closed container protected from light at room temperature for the time described in the individual monograph. If necessary, shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.

Adjustment of the constituents. Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out by dilution, either with the same liquid used for the decoction or with another decoction of the same raw material. Adjustment of content by concentration is carried out carefully and generally under reduced pressure.

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

### TESTS

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.5.*). The tincture complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Dry residue** (*Ph. Eur. 2.8.16. or H 2.2.6.*). The tincture complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Methanol and 2-propanol** (*Ph. Eur. 2.9.11.*). Maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent V/V of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia.

### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the tincture,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to tincture,
- the designation "Decoctum" or "ethanol. Decoctum", if ethanol is used.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures made by decoction

HAB Methods 12k, l  
HAB Methods 19  
HAB Methods 23

### **APC Method 3.10.1. (related to HAB Method 19g)**

Mother tinctures made according to APC Method 3.10.1. are produced according to maceration as follows:

Heat the mixture made according to Ph. Eur. 2731, Method 4a, using 1 part of dried plants or parts of plants to 20 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration and containing the whole amount of ethanol of the required concentration. Boil under reflux for not less than 30 min. After cooling, allow to stand in a closed container at room temperature for the time prescribed in the individual monograph. Express and filter. Adjust to the concentrations required in the individual monograph according to Ph. Eur. 2731, Method 4a.

### Potentiation

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from  
2 parts of the mother tincture and  
8 parts of ethanol of the same concentration,

the 3rd decimal dilution (D3) is made from  
1 part of the 2nd decimal dilution and  
9 parts of ethanol of a reduced concentration as given below.

Use the same method to produce further decimal dilutions, progressively reducing the ethanol concentration in the sequence 94 - 86 - 73 - 62 - 43 - 30 - 15 per cent (*m/m*) until the 15 per cent level is reached.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3.11. Oil extracts with heat treatment

### DEFINITION

Oil extracts are prepared from fresh or dried vegetable matter using a fatty or mineral oil as extraction liquid with heat.

If necessary, mince the vegetable matter to pieces of suitable size. Ethanol 94 per cent (*m/m*) may be added to moisten the plant material. The prescribed quantity of the extraction liquid (mostly peanut, olive, sesame, sunflower oil or liquid paraffin) is added and mixed thoroughly with the vegetable matter. The mixture is heated up at the prescribed temperature and allowed to stand in a closed container for an appropriate time. Extraction temperature and time are prescribed in the individual monograph. If necessary, the empty space of the container is filled with a protecting gas and finally expressed and filtered.

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

### TESTS

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.5.*). The oil extract complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Refractive index** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.6.*). The oil extract complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Peroxide value** (*Ph. Eur. 2.5.5.*). Where applicable, the oil extract complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-filled, airtight container, protected from light and heat. If necessary, the empty space in the container of oil extracts is filled with an inert gas.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the dried vegetable matter used,
- the extraction liquid used,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to extract,
- an indication of the extraction temperature.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

**Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce oil extracts with heat treatment**

HAB Methods 12 d-g  
HAB Method 57

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3.12. Preparations made by distillation

### DEFINITION

To prepare the distillate from fresh plants or parts of plants following follow the procedure given below. Coarsely chop and crush the plant material. Pour 8 parts of alcohol 86 per cent (*m/m*) over 100 parts of plant mass. Leave to stand in a closed container for at least 24 h, then steam distil, ending the steam distillation when 50 parts of distillate have been collected.

The mother tincture is made from  
1 part of distillate and  
1 part of alcohol 15 per cent (*m/m*).

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

### TESTS

**Dry residue** (*Ph. Eur. 2.8.16. or H 2.2.6.*). The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.5.*). Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Methanol and 2-propanol** (*Ph. Eur. 2.9.11.*). Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia.

### Potentiation

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from  
1 part of the mother tincture and  
9 parts of alcohol 15 per cent (*m/m*).  
Subsequent dilutions are produced accordingly.

### Recommended Designation

Distillates and derived dosage forms carry the designation „destillata“.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce preparations made by distillation

HAB Method 52

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 3.13. Tinctures obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold

### DEFINITION

Tinctures obtained with rhythmic application of heat and cold are aqueous preparations from fresh or dried vegetable matter or saps from fresh vegetable matter obtained by fermentation under cold and heat application.

If necessary, the vegetable matter is minced to appropriate size. Add purified water. If stated in the individual monograph add the prescribed fermenting agent.

It is also possible to ferment the expressed plant sap or the finely minced fresh plant without addition of purified water.

Treat rhythmically with application of heat (generally 37 °C) and cold (generally 4 °C).

Where required, express and filter after the time prescribed in the individual monograph.

Salts, specific plant ashes, metals or minerals may be added according to the individual monograph.

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

### TESTS

**pH** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.2.3.). The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Dry residue** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.8.16. or *H* 2.2.6.). The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.2.5.). Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Methanol and 2-propanol** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.9.11.). Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia.

### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when raw materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light, where applicable below 15 °C.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh vegetable matter used,
- where applicable, the name of the salt, metal or mineral added,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the designation „ferm“ (with water and adjuvants) or „Rh“ (fermented plant sap without adjuvants).

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures obtained with rhythmic application of heat and cold

HAB Method 21  
HAB Method 22  
HAB Methods 33  
HAB Methods 34  
HAB Methods 35  
HAB Method 36  
HAB Methods 37  
HAB Methods 51

### APC Method 3.13.1. (related to HAB Method 21)

Rh mother tinctures made according to APC Method 3.13.1. are produced from fresh plants as follows: Mince and express the plant material immediately after harvesting. Transfer the expressed liquid to containers not more than three quarters full and expose to the circadian hot and cold rhythms described below ('Rh') until fermentation is complete.

In the mornings, heat the expressed liquid during a period of not less than 30 min to about 37 °C and maintain at this temperature. In the evenings, cool down to about 4 °C during a period of not less than 30 min and maintain at this temperature.

During every heating and cooling phase shake the container with the expressed fluid for not less than 10 min. Filter as soon as fermentation ceases.

#### Potentiation

##### Aqueous dilutions

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from

1 part of Rh mother tincture and  
9 parts of water for injections.

Prepare further dilutions in the same way, using water for injections as the vehicle at every stage.

##### Ethanollic dilutions

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from

1 part of Rh mother tincture and  
9 parts of ethanol 15 per cent (*m/m*).

Prepare further dilutions in the same way, using ethanol 15 per cent (*m/m*) as the vehicle at every stage.

#### Recommended designation

Preparations made according to APC Method 3.13.1. carry the designation "Rh"; the same applies to preparations made from them. If ethanol 15 per cent (*m/m*) is used from the 1st decimal dilution onwards, state this on the label.

### APC Method 3.13.2. (related to HAB Method 22)

Rh mother tinctures made according to APC Method 3.13.2. are produced from fresh plants as follows: Mince the plant material immediately after harvesting. Expose to the circadian hot and cold rhythms described under HAB Method 21 ("Rh") for about 10 days. Express.

Treat the expressed liquid as for HAB Method 21 until fermentation is complete. Filter as soon as this point is reached.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Potentiation

### Aqueous dilutions

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from

1 part of Rh mother tincture and  
9 parts of water for injections.

Prepare further dilutions in the same way, using water for injections as the vehicle at every stage.

### Ethanolic dilutions

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from

1 part of Rh mother tincture and  
9 parts of ethanol 15 per cent (*m/m*).

Prepare further dilutions in the same way, using ethanol 15 per cent (*m/m*) as the vehicle at every stage.

### Recommended designation

Preparations made according to APC Method 3.13.2. carry the designation "Rh"; the same applies to preparations made from them. If ethanol 15 per cent (*m/m*) is used from the 1st decimal dilution onwards, state this on the label.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 4. SOLID STARTING MATERIALS OBTAINED BY HEAT

Heat treatment can be applied directly to solid starting materials from botanical or zoological origin without addition of a vehicle. The heat treatment may be performed under presence or reduced presence of oxygen. Solid starting materials obtained by heat include toasted preparations, carbons (Carbo) and ashes (Cinis).

---

### 4.1. Toasted preparations (Tosta)

#### DEFINITION

Toasted preparations are obtained from dried plants or parts of plants or solid, dried animal matter by toasting. Toasted preparations are dry, usually brownish and have an intense and characteristic odour.

The substances to be toasted are crushed, if necessary, and are strongly exposed to a heat source for the prescribed time. During the process water evaporates and the matter becomes brown or brownish. This is achieved through the control of the heat supply, usually 170 – 250°C and by tossing the material during the heat supply.

Particle size of the raw material, temperature and heating time are prescribed in the individual monograph.

Toasted substances may be potentised according to HAB Method 6.

#### IDENTIFICATION/TESTS

According to the individual monograph.

#### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container.

#### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the vegetable or animal matter used,
- the designation "tostus/a/um/".

Example: Spongia tosta

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 4.2. Carbons (Carbo)

### DEFINITION

Carbons are brittle, generally black substances prepared from dried vegetable or animal matter.

The plant or animal matter is heated to an approximate temperature over 200 °C under reduced presence of oxygen to produce the carbonised deposit. The carbonised substance is powdered.

Carbons may be potentised according to HAB Method 6.

### IDENTIFICATION

The identification is carried out according to the individual monograph.

### TESTS

The tests are carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable:

- Acidity or Alkalinity,
- Acid-soluble substances,
- Adsorption power,
- Alkali-soluble coloured matter,
- Cyanide,
- Ethanol-soluble substances,
- Fluorescent substances,
- Heavy metals (*Ph. Eur. 2.4.8.*),
- Loss on drying (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.32.*),
- Sulphated ash (*Ph. Eur. 2.4.14.*),
- Sulphide,
- Total ash (*Ph. Eur. 2.4.16.*),
- Zinc.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the name of the vegetable or animal matter used,
- the designation "Carbo".

Example: Carbo Gentianae

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce carbons

B.Hom.P. Method Br4

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 4.3. Ashes (Cinis)

### DEFINITION

Ashes are generally fine, amorphous, white, grey, beige or brown powders. They are prepared from dried vegetable or animal matter.

The vegetable or animal matter is incinerated generally at a temperature between 500 and 700 °C.

Cinis may be potentised according to HAB Method 6.

### IDENTIFICATION

The identification is carried out according to the individual monograph.

### TESTS

The tests are carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable:

- Acid insoluble substances,
- Arsenic (*Ph.Eur. 2.4.2.*),
- Heavy metals (*Ph.Eur. 2.4.8.*),
- Loss on drying (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.32.*).

### ASSAY

Where applicable the Cinis complies with the individual monograph.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container with a desiccant.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the name of the vegetable or animal substance used,
- the designation "Cinis".

Example: Cinis Tabaci

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce ashes

B.Hom.P. Method Br3

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 5. SOLID PREPARATIONS FROM PLANTS (DRYING ONTO A VEHICLE)

Solid preparations from plants are obtained either by drying fresh plants, plant juices or aqueous extracts onto a vehicle.

---

### 5.1. Solid preparations from fresh plants

#### DEFINITION

Solid preparations of fresh plants are obtained by drying fresh plant material onto suitable vehicles e.g. lactose monohydrate.

The fresh plant material, which is reduced to pieces of suitable size, is mixed thoroughly with the vehicle in order to adsorb its liquid part. The mixture is dried gently and milled if necessary.

#### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic test is carried out.

#### TESTS

**Loss on drying** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.32.*): The solid preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Microbiological quality** (*Ph. Eur. 5.1.4.*): Category 3

#### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when raw materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

#### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

#### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the name of the plant material used,
- the quantity used,
- the vehicle used.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce solid preparations from fresh plants

### APC Method 5.1.1.

Preparations according to APC Method 5.1.1. are solid preparations of fresh plants obtained by drying fresh vegetable matter onto lactose monohydrate.

Mince the plants or part of plants. To 1 part of the minced plant material add the required amount of lactose monohydrate, usually 2,9 parts unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph. Mix thoroughly. Dry the moist mixture gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 5.2. Solid preparations from plant juices or aqueous extracts

### DEFINITION

Solid preparations of fresh plants are obtained by drying plant juices or aqueous extracts onto suitable vehicles e.g. lactose monohydrate.

The juice expressed or the aqueous extracts from the fresh plant material is mixed thoroughly with the vehicle. The mixture is dried gently and milled if necessary.

### IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic test is carried out.

### TESTS

**Loss on drying** (*Ph. Eur.* 2.2.32.). The solid preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Microbiological quality** (*Ph. Eur.* 5.1.4.). Category 3

### ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when raw materials with toxicologically relevant substances are used.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the name of the plant material used,
- the quantity used,
- the vehicle used.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce solid preparations from liquid extracts/ plant juices

### APC Method 5.2.1.

Preparations according to APC Method 5.2.1. are solid preparations from fresh plant juices obtained by drying the fresh plant juice onto lactose monohydrate or another excipient.

1 part of the expressed plant juice or aqueous extract is added to 1,9 parts of lactose monohydrate or other excipient unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph to obtain a wet granulate. Dry the wet granulate gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly. For granulation it may be necessary to concentrate the plant juice under reduced pressure.

### APC Method 5.2.2.

Preparations according to APC Method 5.2.2. are solid preparations from fresh plant juices obtained by drying the fresh plant juice onto lactose monohydrate or another excipient.

The the expressed plant juice of 1 part of the fresh plant is added to 3 parts of lactose monohydrate or other excipient unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph to obtain a wet granulate. Dry the wet granulate gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly. For granulation it may be necessary to concentrate the plant juice under reduced pressure.

### APC Method 5.2.3.

Preparations according to APC Method 5.2.3. are solid preparations from aqueous extracts obtained by drying aqueous extracts of fresh plants onto lactose monohydrate or another excipient.

1 part of the comminuted fresh plants is mixed 0.15 parts of purified water. The expressed aqueous extract is added to 4 parts of lactose monohydrate or other excipient unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph to obtain a wet granulate. Dry the wet granulate gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly. For granulation it may be necessary to concentrate the aqueous extract under reduced pressure.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 6. LIQUID SOLUTIONS

### DEFINITION

Liquid solutions are liquid preparations obtained by dissolving one or more starting materials in an appropriate vehicle. The liquid obtained may be directly potentised.

The starting material is dissolved in the appropriate vehicle. Dissolution may require heating or stirring. The separation of a residue may be necessary.

Where necessary, immediately after the dissolution the first potentisation step is carried out in accordance with the individual monograph.

### IDENTIFICATION

Liquid solutions are identified using a suitable method.

### TESTS

**Appearance** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.1., 2.2.2.*). Where applicable, the liquid complies with the limits described in the individual monograph.

**pH** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.3.*). Where applicable, the liquid solution complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Dry residue** (*Ph. Eur. 2.8.16. or H 2.2.6.*). Where applicable, the liquid solution complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

**Relative density** (*Ph. Eur. 2.2.5.*). The liquid solution complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

### ASSAY

Where applicable, liquid solutions of chemically defined starting materials are assayed.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the name of the substance dissolved,
- the quantity dissolved,
- where applicable, the degree of potentisation.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce liquid solutions

HAB Methods 5

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 7. COMPOSITIONS

Compositions are made from two or more starting materials and /or preparations with or without vehicles, by jointly treating them with a pharmaceutical process that will lead to a new substance. The rationale for composing is the anthroposophic understanding of man, nature, substance and processing. Compositions may be potentised.

---

### 7.1. Compositions made by treating two or more starting materials by one or more pharmaceutical processes.

They are obtained by combining starting materials in a defined ratio according to the individual monograph using a specified process (e.g. specified mixing, heat treatment, a chemical process).

#### IDENTIFICATION/TESTS

According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

#### RECOMMENDED LABELLING

The label states:

- the name of the composition,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

**Specific APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.1.**

Examples (see appendix 2.6.): Anis-Pyrit, Ferrum-Quartz, Hepar-Magnesium, Hepar sulfuris, Kalium aceticum comp., Plumbum mellitum, Solutio Sacchari comp. (mineral compositions according to the model of a plant).

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## **7.2. Compositions made by treating two or more mother tinctures with one or more mother tinctures or dilutions by one or more pharmaceutical processes.**

The concerning compositions are obtained from extracts (mother tinctures) of the same plant species harvested at different seasons, i.e. at different stages of development.

According to the individual monograph the extracts are combined in a defined ratio by a specific pharmaceutical process eventually using specific equipment. Adjustment of concentration by diluting, pH adjustment, and adjustment of osmolality may be carried out.

### IDENTIFICATION/TESTS

According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

### RECOMMENDED LABELLING

The label states:

- the name of the composition,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.2.

HAB Method 32

HAB Method 38

See appendix 2.6., for example *Viscum album* compositions.

### **APC Method 7.2.1. (see also APC Method 3.7.1.)**

Compositions according to APC Method 7.2.1. are produced from fresh plants or parts of plants by the following procedure:

Finely mince the plants or parts of plants and mix 1 part of the plant mass with 1 part of purified water. Leave to ferment at 20 to 24°C with the exclusion of air, ending the fermentation when the pH of the fermentation liquid has fallen to between 4 and 5. Then express and weigh the expressed liquid. The weight of the expressed liquid is equal to 2 parts and is mixed with 1 part of a mixture of 0.95 parts of alcohol 94 per cent (*m/m*) and 0.05 parts of purified water. This tincture is stored until such time as it will undergo another pharmaceutical process with a second tincture of the same plant.

This procedure is followed for plants harvested in the summer and for plants of the same species, harvested in the winter.

The mother tincture is produced by unifying equal parts of the two tinctures.

The composition can be potentised as follows:

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from  
3 parts of the mother tincture and  
7 parts of alcohol 30 per cent (*m/m*),  
the 2nd decimal dilution (D2) from  
1 part of the 1st decimal dilution and  
9 parts of alcohol 15 per cent (*m/m*).  
Subsequent dilutions are produced accordingly.

Recommended designation

Preparations according to APC Method 7.2.1. carry the designation „ferm APC 7.2.1.“.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## **7.3. Compositions made by treating two or more starting materials with one or more mother tinctures which undergo one or more pharmaceutical processes together.**

They are obtained by combining one or more starting materials with one or more stocks in a defined ratio according to the individual monograph.

### IDENTIFICATION/TESTS

According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

### RECOMMENDED LABELLING

The label states:

- the name of the composition,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

**Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.3.**

Examples (see appendix 2.6.): Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae cum Magnesio phosphorico, Cissus-Ossa.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 8. POTENTISED PREPARATIONS

### DEFINITION

Potentised preparations are gradually diluted substances, whereby at each diluting step a rhythmic succussion (liquid potencies) or trituration (solid potencies) has been carried out for a defined time. The potentising time differs for solid and liquid potentised preparations. Astronomical aspects may be considered (e.g. solar or lunar eclipse). The preparations are defined by the number of liquid potentising or trituration steps respectively and by the ratio between the vehicle (diluting agent) and the substance to be potentised.

The potentising ratio is usually:

1 part of substance  
9 parts of vehicle.

or

The potentising ratio for co-potentised preparations is usually:

1 part of a mixture of equal parts of active substances  
9 parts of vehicle.

### Liquid potencies:

The substance or mixture to be potentised is dissolved in the vehicle in the chosen ratio. Usual vehicles for liquid potencies are water (purified or water for injections), ethanol of various concentration, glycerol, vegetable oils. Excipients might be necessary, for example to emulsify an aqueous substance into oil. After dissolution, rhythmic succussion is carried out. For the next potentising step one part of the first potency and the prescribed amount of vehicle are brought together and succussed. Further potentising is carried out in likewise manner.

### Solid potencies (triturations):

Potencies of solid substances are prepared by trituration of the substance to be potentised usually with lactose monohydrate in the prescribed ratio in a mortar with a pestle or in an adequate triturator. Solid potencies can be further potentised in liquid phase, if they are soluble in a vehicle.

### IDENTIFICATION, TESTS, ASSAY

are carried out according to the individual monograph.

### STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container.

### RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
- the name of the potentised substance(s),
- where applicable, the ethanol content,
- the potentising vehicle used if other than lactose monohydrate,
- the potentising ratio; decimal potencies may be designated as D or DH or X,
- the potency degree.

Example: D3 or 3 DH or 3X.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce potentised preparations

HAB Method 6  
HAB Method 7  
HAB Methods 8  
HAB Method 12j  
HAB Method 17  
B.Hom.P. Method Br5  
B.Hom.P. Method Br6

The potentising specifications in Ph.Eur. Monograph 2731 of Methods 1, 2, 3, 4.

The potentising specifications in HAB methods  
5, 11, 15, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39a, 39b, 40, 41, 42, 45, 51, 53.

The potentising specifications in APC Methods.

### 8.1. Co-potentised preparations

Co-potentised preparations are liquid dilutions potentised with a suitable vehicle. The parts of active substances can be variable (n) and consequently the vehicle is then 10 minus n parts.

#### APC Method 8.1.1. (related to HAB Method 40a)

Co-potentised compositions according to APC Method 8.1.1. may be prepared from starting materials (used as active substances, see also part I, chapter 4) in combination with solutions, potentised preparations and mother tinctures whose method of production is specified by a ratio of 1 part of starting material and 10 parts of extraction solvent.

#### Potentisation

For the first co-potentisation stage combine and succuss 1 part of each of the n preparations with 10 minus n parts of ethanol of the appropriate concentration specified under HAB H 5.3. For each further co-potentisation stage the ratio is 1 part of the given composed potency and 9 parts of vehicle. Co-potentised compositions may be used to produce all types of dosage forms. Co-potentisation of mixtures according to APC Method 8.1.1. to produce parenteral preparations or eye drops is carried out with water for injections or an isotonic solution as diluting agent.

#### Recommended designation

The designation of co-potentised compositions and derived dosage forms states how many potentising stages were carried out on the mixture as a whole adding the expressions "rhythmically diluted".

#### APC Method 8.1.2. (related to HAB Method 6)

Preparations according to APC Method 8.1.2. are triturations of solid substances with lactose monohydrate as potentising vehicle unless otherwise specified in a ratio of 1:10.

Triturate using a machine that ensures even trituration. Suitable machines include mixers with rhythmic, pulsating spatial inversion (e.g. "Turbula"), in combination with a sealable mixing vessel and appropriate grinding balls as well as other machines with rotating movements such as the ball mill.

Triturate the whole amount of vehicle with the substance to be potentised.

The trituration time depends on the machine and the chosen parameters. Trituration must be between 15 and 60 minutes. It has to be ensured, that the trituration is homogeneous and that particle size reduction is achieved.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 8.2. Potentising in an ointment base

Liquid and solid starting materials can be potentised within an ointment base.

### **APC-Method 8.2.1. (Ointments containing powdered solid starting materials, related to HAB Method 48)**

Ointments containing powdered solid starting materials are produced with 1 part of a powdered metal, powdered mineral or a composition containing minerals and 9 parts of an ointment base leading to a homogeneous ointment. This potentising step in an ointment base results in the first decimal dilution (D1).

The particle size of the powdered solid starting material must be smaller than 100 µm.

Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.1. must meet the requirements of the Ph. Eur. monograph "Semi-solid preparations for cutaneous application".

Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.1. can be used further to produce ointments according to HAB Method 13.

Recommended designation

Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.1. carry the designation "APC M" and the resulting decimal dilution "D1".

### **APC-Method 8.2.2. (Ointments containing solid or liquid dilutions)**

Ointments containing solid or liquid dilutions are produced with 1 part of a decimal solid or liquid dilution (Dn) and 9 parts of an ointment base leading to a homogeneous ointment. The resulting decimal dilution degree is (Dn+1).

Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.2. must meet the requirements of the Ph. Eur. monograph "Semi-solid preparations for cutaneous application".

Recommended designation

Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.2 carry the designation of the resulting degree of decimal dilution.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## 9. MIXTURES

### DEFINITION

Mixtures are produced from one or more active substances. Vehicles and/or excipients may be added. Mixtures contain the sum of the active substances mixed together. A special manufacturing method is not needed (cf.compositions). Mixtures are used to facilitate the administration of more than one active substance in one single finished product. The mixture itself may be the final dosage form.

Mixtures can be classified into four categories:

#### 9.1.Mixtures of preparations with a vehicle

9.1a. Liquid preparations produced according to HAB or APC methods in which the vehicle is added in a ratio other than 1 to 10 or 1 to 100.

9.1b. Solid preparations produced according to HAB or APC methods in which the vehicle is added in a ratio other than 1 to 10 or 1 to 100.

9.1c. Liquid and solid preparations, produced according to HAB or APC methods, resulting in a liquid preparation, in which the vehicle is added in a ratio other than 1 to 10 or 1 to 100.

#### 9.2.Mixtures of preparations without a vehicle

9.2a. Mixtures of liquid preparations produced according to HAB or APC methods.

9.2b. Mixtures of solid preparations produced according to HAB or APC methods.

9.2c. Liquid and solid preparations, produced according to HAB or APC methods, resulting in a liquid preparation.

#### 9.3. Mixtures of preparations with excipients and vehicles.

9.3a. Liquid preparations produced according to HAB or APC methods with an excipient(s). Vehicles may be added.

9.3b. Liquid and solid preparations, produced according to HAB or APC methods, resulting in a liquid preparation with an excipient(s). Vehicles may be added.

9.4. Mixtures of starting materials used as active substances and mother tinctures or preparations with or without vehicles and/or excipients.

### RECOMMENDED LABELLING

-the ingredients mixed and their quantity,

-reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

**Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mixtures**

HAB Method 12  
HAB Method 16

# **Part III Dosage forms**

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Dosage forms

Principally an anthroposophic medicinal product can be administered in every dosage form, including external (topical), internal and parenteral dosage forms, with or without excipients.

A dosage form of an anthroposophic medicinal product complies with any relevant dosage form monograph and any relevant test for that dosage form as described in the European Pharmacopoeia or in pharmacopoeias currently used officially in the EU Member States.

Main dosage forms for anthroposophic medicinal products and concerning references to official pharmacopoeias:

Main dosage forms for internal use	Relevant pharmacopoeial specifications in:
Capsule	Ph. Eur.
Dilution	Ph. Eur., HAB
Globuli velati	Ph. Eur., HAB
Granules	Ph. Eur.
Mother tincture	Ph. Eur., HAB
Oral powder, Trituration	Ph. Eur., HAB
Oral drops	Ph. Eur.
Pillule	Ph. Eur., HAB, Ph. Fr.
Syrup	Ph. Eur.
Tablet	Ph. Eur., HAB

Main dosage forms for external/ topical use	Relevant pharmacopoeial specifications in:
Creams	Ph. Eur.
Cutaneous powder	Ph. Eur.
Ear drops, solution, dilution	Ph. Eur., HAB
Eye drops, solution, dilution	Ph. Eur., HAB
Gel	Ph. Eur., HAB
Lotion	B.P.
Nasal drops, solution	Ph. Eur., HAB
Nasal spray, solution	Ph. Eur.
Oil	HAB
Ointment	Ph. Eur., HAB
Oromucosal gel, solution, spray	Ph. Eur., HAB
Liquid preparations for cutaneous application	Ph. Eur., HAB
Vaginalia	Ph. Eur., HAB
Suppositories	Ph. Eur., HAB

Main dosage forms for parenteral use	Relevant pharmacopoeial specifications in:
Liquid dilution for injection	Ph. Eur., HAB
Solution for injection	Ph. Eur.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

**Dosage forms** of anthroposophic medicinal products comply with pharmacopoeial standards, e.g. the relevant monographs of the Ph.Eur. and the concerning manufacturing specifications of the HAB.

---

## **Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce dosage forms**

Dosage forms according to Ph. Eur. Monograph 1038

HAB Method 11, Parenteral preparations, Liquid dilutions for injection

HAB Method 15, Eye drops

HAB Methods 39, Globuli velati

HAB Method 48, Ointments containing powdered metal

APC-Method 8.2.1.

## **APC Pillules containing Lactose (related to HAB Method 10 and Ph. Fr.)**

APC Pillules containing lactose are pillules made by applying one or more potentised liquid preparations to saccharose pillules, which may contain up to 5 per cent of lactose. The potentising ratio usually is 1:100 (*v/m* or *m/m*). The ethanol concentration of the potentised liquid preparation(s) is at least 60 per cent (*m/m*). If this is not the case and interactions are excluded, the last potentisation step for decimal potentised preparations must be carried out with ethanol of at least 62 per cent (*m/m*). In case incompatibilities are expected, use ethanol of lower concentration.

Preformed pillule sizes Ph. Eur. 3 and 6.:

Ph. Eur. size 3: 110 to 130 pillules weigh 1 g

Ph. Eur. size 6: 20 to 28 pillules weigh 1 g.

Dry the pillules after impregnation in air.

## RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

the designation states:

the amount of potentised preparation(s),

the potency degree,

the potentising ratio in case other than 1:100.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

---

**ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX**

**APC**

**PART IV**

**Appendices  
(Starting materials)**

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## I Lists of Starting Materials

Reference List for the Appendices to chapters 2.1. to 2.6.

Appendix 2.1. List of minerals, rocks and natural waters

Appendix 2.2. List of starting materials of botanical origin

Appendix 2.3. List of starting materials of zoological origin

Appendix 2.4. List of starting materials that can be described chemically

Appendix 2.5. List of starting materials that have undergone special treatment

Appendix 2.6. List of compositions

## II Other Links to the HAB and to the HPUS

List HAB monographs of substances used in anthroposophic pharmacy

Correspondence list between HAB production methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy and HPUS classes/general pharmacy

### Reference List for the Appendices 2.1. to 2.6.

Bertsch, K.: *Flora von Südwest-Deutschland*. Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft mbH Stuttgart 1962

Chmelar, J. u. Meusel, W.: *Die Weiden Europas*. Ziemsen-Verlag, Wittenberg Lutherstadt 1986

Erhardt, W., Götz, E., Bödeker, N. u. Seybold, S.: *Zander: Handwörterbuch der Pflanzennamen*. Eugen Ulmer, Stuttgart 2000

HagerROM 2006, *Hagers Handbuch der Drogen und Arzneistoffe*. Springer Medizin Verlag, Heidelberg 2006

Harms, H.: *Die Mistel und ihre Verbreitung in Ostwestfalen*. Mitt. Dt. Dendrologischen Gesellschaft 1973

Hartmann, Th.: *Anatomische und morphologische Untersuchungen zum Wechselverhältnis von Mistelpflanzen und ihren Wirtsgehölzen am Beispiel der Tannenmistel und der Kiefernmistel*. Dissert. Technische Universität Berlin 1994

Moberg, R. u. Holmasen, I.: *Flechten von Nord- und Mitteleuropa. Ein Bestimmungsbuch*. Gustav Fischer, Stuttgart 1992

Roberts, W.L., Rapp, G.R., Jr., u. Weber, J.: *Encyclopaedia of Minerals*. Van Nostrand, New York 1974

Rothmaler, W., Jäger, E.J. u. Werner, K. in: *Rothmaler, W.: Exkursionsflora von Deutschland*. Spektrum Akademischer Verlag, Heidelberg 2000

Schindler, H. u. Helma, F.: *Tiere in der Pharmazie und Medizin*. Hippokrates-Verlag, Stuttgart 1961

Schmeil, O. u. Fitschen, J.: *Flora von Deutschland und angrenzender Länder*. Quelle & Meyer Verlag, Heidelberg 1988

Schweingruber, F.H.: *Anatomie europäischer Hölzer*. Haupt, Bern/Stuttgart 1990

Sitte, P., Ziegler, H., Ehrendorfer, F. u. Bresinsky, A.: *Strasburger: Lehrbuch der Botanik*. Gustav Fischer, Stuttgart 1991

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Teuscher, E.: *Biogene Arzneimittel*. Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft mbH Stuttgart 1997

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Appendix 2.1.:

### Minerals, rocks and natural waters

Note: Starting Materials marked with "AS" are also used as active substances.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the raw material	Abbreviated Definition	AS	Reference to Standard
Amethyst	The natural mineral Amethyst	AS	
Antimonit	The natural mineral Antimonite	AS	HAB
Apatit	The natural mineral Apatite		HAB
Aqua agatae	Water existing inside an undamaged Agate geode		
Aqua maris	Oceanic water		
Aragonit	The natural mineral Aragonite		
Arandisit	The natural mineral Arandisite		
Argentit	The natural mineral Argentite		HAB
Argentum naturale	Naturally occurring Silver		
Aurum naturale	Naturally occurring Gold		
Basalt	The naturally occurring Basalt rock		
Berthierit	The natural mineral Berthierite		
Bolus alba	see Kaolinum ponderosum		Ph.Eur.
Calcit	The natural mineral Calcite		
Calx jurassica	The natural Jura Limestone		
Carneol	The natural mineral Carnelian		
Cerit	The natural mineral Cerite		
Cerussit	The natural mineral Cerussite		HAB
Chalcedon	The natural mineral Chalcedony		
Chalkopyrit	The natural mineral Chalcopyrite		
Chalkosin	The natural mineral Chalcocite		HAB
Chlorargyrit	The natural mineral Cerargyrite		
Chrysolith	The natural mineral Chrysolite		HAB
Chrysopras	The natural mineral Chrysoprase		
Cuprit	The natural mineral Cuprite		HAB
Diaspor	The natural mineral Diaspore		
Diopas	The natural mineral Diopase		HAB
Dyskrasit	The natural mineral Dyscrasite		HAB
Ferrum sidereum	Iron meteorite = meteoric iron		HAB
Ferrum silicicum naturale	see Nontronit		
Fluorit	The natural mineral Fluorite	AS	HAB
Galenit	The natural mineral Galena		HAB
Glacies Mariae	Clear, colourless, variety of the natural mineral Gypsum (Selenite)		
Granat	The natural mineral Garnet (Almandine or other varieties)		
Granit	The natural rock Granite		
Graphites	The natural mineral Graphite		HAB
Halit	The natural mineral Halite		HAB
Haematit	The natural mineral Haematite		HAB
Heliotrop	The natural mineral Heliotrope		
Hyazinth	The natural mineral Hyacinth		
Hydrargyrum metallicum naturale	Naturally occurring Mercury		
Jaspis	The natural mineral red Jasper		
Kaolinum ponderosum	Kaolin, heavy	AS	Ph. Eur.
Kassiterit	The natural mineral Kassiterite		
Katoptrit	The natural mineral Katoptrite		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the raw material	Abbreviated Definition	AS	Reference to Standard
Kieserit	The natural mineral Kieserite		HAB
Lapis albus	The natural rock Lapis albus		
Lapis sectilis	The natural rock Lapis sectilis		
Lava	The natural rock Lava		
Levico	Mineral water from the source Levico, Italy		
Magnesit	The natural mineral Magnesite	AS	HAB
Malachit	The natural mineral Malachite		HAB
Marmor	The natural rock marble		
Mercurius vivus naturalis	see Hydrargyrum metallicum naturale		
Nontronit	The natural mineral Nontronite		HAB
Olivenit	The natural mineral Olivenite		HAB
Onyx	The natural mineral Onyx		HAB
Opal	The natural mineral Opale		
Orthoklas	The natural mineral Orthoclase		
Pallasit	Stone-Iron- Meteorite		
Pharmakolith	The natural mineral Pharmacolite		HAB
Phosphorochalcit	The natural mineral Phosphorocalcite		
Platinum naturale	Naturally occurring Platinum		
Pyrargyrit	The natural mineral Pyrargyrite		
Pyrit	The natural mineral Pyrites		HAB
Pyromorphit	The natural mineral Pyromorphite		HAB
Quarz	The natural mineral rock crystal Quartz	AS	HAB
Quarz rosae	The natural mineral Rose Quartz		
Realgar	The natural mineral Realgar		
Rubellit	The natural mineral Rubellite (pink to red Tourmaline)		
Rubin	The natural mineral Ruby		
Sal maris	Seasalt		
Saphir	The natural mineral Sapphire		
Siderit	The natural mineral Siderite		HAB
Silex	The natural mineral Flint	AS	
Skorodit	The natural mineral Scorodite		HAB
Succinum	Fossil resin amber		HAB
Sylvin	The natural mineral Sylvine		
Terra medicinalis	Dried, finely-divided, naturally occurring clay and silt with a varied composition of aluminium oxide, silica, iron oxide and limestone	AS	
Terra rubra	The natural red clay	AS	
Thenardit	The natural mineral Thenardite		
Topas	The natural mineral Topaz		
Trona	The natural mineral Trona		
Vivianit	The natural mineral Vivianite		HAB
Witherit	The natural mineral Witherite		HAB
Zinnober	The natural mineral Cinnabar		HAB

## Appendix 2.2.:

### Starting materials of botanical origin

Note: Starting Materials marked with "AS" are also used as active substances.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Abies alba</i> Mill.	Fresh tops of <i>Abies alba</i> . Mill.		
<i>Abies pectinata</i> (Lam.) DC.	Young, fresh, leafy branches of <i>Abies pectinata</i> (Lam.) DC		Ph. Fr.
Abrotanum	See <i>Artemisia abrotanum</i> L.		
Absinthium	See <i>Artemisia absinthium</i> L.		
Acetum Vini	See <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.		
Acetum Vini destillatum	See <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.		
<i>Achillea millefolium</i> L.	Fresh, whole flowering plant of <i>Achillea millefolium</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Achillea millefolium</i> L.	Fresh, leaves of <i>Achillea millefolium</i> L., collected in Spring		
<i>Achillea millefolium</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Achillea millefolium</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Achillea millefolium</i> L.	Whole or cut, dried flowering tops of <i>Achillea millefolium</i> L. (Yarrow).	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Achillea millefolium</i> L.	Dried flowers of <i>Achillea millefolium</i> L.		
<i>Aconitum napellus</i> L.	Fresh, whole plants of <i>Aconitum napellus</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Aconitum napellus</i> L.	Fresh whole plants of <i>Aconitum napellus</i> L., collected at the start of flowering		HAB
<i>Aconitum napellus</i> L.	Dried tubers of <i>Aconitum napellus</i> L.		
<i>Aconitum napellus</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Aconitum napellus</i> L.		
<i>Acorus calamus</i> L.	Volatile oil from the underground parts of <i>Acorus calamus</i> L.		
<i>Acorus calamus</i> L.	Peeled, dried rhizome of <i>Acorus calamus</i> L., with roots and leaf residues removed.		HAB
<i>Acorus calamus</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Acorus calamus</i> L.		
<i>Actaea racemosa</i>	see <i>Cimicifuga racemosa</i> (L.) Nutt.		
<i>Actaea spicata</i> L.	Fresh, underground parts of <i>Actaea spicata</i> L.		HAB
<i>Adonis vernalis</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Adonis vernalis</i> L.		HAB
<i>Aesculus hippocastanum</i> L.	Fresh bark from young branches of <i>Aesculus hippocastanum</i> L.		
<i>Aesculus hippocastanum</i> L.	Fresh buds of <i>Aesculus hippocastanum</i> L.		
<i>Aesculus hippocastanum</i> L.	Freshly peeled seeds of <i>Aesculus hippocastanum</i> L.		HAB
<i>Aesculus hippocastanum</i> L.	Fresh unpeeled seeds of <i>Aesculus hippocastanum</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Aesculus hippocastanum</i> L.	Dried bark from branches of <i>Aesculus hippocastanum</i> L.		HAB
<i>Aesculus hippocastanum</i> L.	Dried seeds of <i>Aesculus hippocastanum</i> L.		DAB / USP
<i>Aethusa cynapium</i> L.	Fresh whole plant of <i>Aethusa cynapium</i> L. at the end of flowering		Ph. Fr.
<i>Agaricus bulbosus</i>	see <i>Amanita phalloides</i> (Fr.) Link.		
<i>Agaricus muscarius</i>	see <i>Amanita muscaria</i> (L.) Pers.		
<i>Agnus castus</i>	see <i>Vitex agnus-castus</i> L.		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Agropyron repens</i> (L.) P. Beauv.	Whole or cut, washed and dried rhizome of <i>Agropyron repens</i> (L.) P. Beauv. ( <i>Elymus repens</i> [L.] Gould); the adventitious roots are removed (Couch Grass Rhizome)		Ph. Eur.
<i>Agropyron repens</i> (L.) P. Beauv.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Agropyron repens</i> (L.) P. Beauv.		HAB
<i>Ailanthus glandulosa</i> Desf.	Fresh, young flowering and leafy branches of <i>Ailanthus glandulosa</i> Desf.		HAB
<i>Ajuga reptans</i> L.	Fresh whole plants of <i>Ajuga reptans</i> L. at flowering time		Ph. Fr.
<i>Alcea rosea</i> L.	Dried, fully developed flowers with calices of <i>Alcea rosea</i> L.		
<i>Alchemilla xanthochlora</i> Rothm.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Alchemilla xanthochlora</i> Rothm. at flowering		
Alfalfa	see <i>Medicago sativa</i> L.		
<i>Allium cepa</i> L.	Fresh bulbs of <i>Allium cepa</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Allium sativum</i> L.	Fresh bulbs of <i>Allium sativum</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Eur. / USP
<i>Allium ursinum</i> L.	Fresh whole plants of <i>Allium ursinum</i> L. at the start of flowering		HAB
<i>Aloe ferox</i> Mill. and other <i>Aloe</i> species	Concentrated, dried juice of the leaves of various <i>Aloe</i> species, particularly <i>Aloe ferox</i> Mill., sold commercially as Cape aloe. Barbados aloe (Curacao aloe), obtained from <i>Aloe barbadensis</i> Mill., is not used.		Ph. Fr., HAB
<i>Althaea officinalis</i> L.	Peeled or unpeeled, whole or cut, dried root of <i>Althaea officinalis</i> L. (Marshmallow Root)		Ph. Eur.
<i>Amanita muscaria</i> (L.) Pers.	Fresh fruiting bodies of <i>Amanita muscaria</i> (L.) Pers.		
<i>Amanita phalloides</i> (Fr.) Link.	Fresh fruiting bodies of <i>Amanita phalloides</i> (Fr.) Link.		HAB
<i>Amaryllis bella-donna</i> L.	Fresh, whole plant of <i>Amaryllis bella-donna</i> L. at flowering		
<i>Ammi visnaga</i> (L.) Lam.	Dried ripe fruits of <i>Ammi visnaga</i> (L.) Lam.		HAB / DAB 1998
Amygdala amara	see <i>Prunus dulcis</i> var. <i>amara</i> (DC.) Buchheim		
Anacardium	see <i>Semecarpus anacardium</i> L.f.		
<i>Anagallis arvensis</i> L.	Fresh whole plant of <i>Anagallis arvensis</i> L. at flowering		Ph. Fr.
<i>Anagallis arvensis</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Anagallis arvensis</i> L., collected at flowering		
<i>Anagallis arvensis</i> L.	Dried aerial parts of <i>Anagallis arvensis</i> L., having been collected at flowering		
<i>Anamirta cocculus</i> Wight et Arn.	Ripe, dried fruits of <i>Anamirta cocculus</i> Wight et Arn.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Ananas comosus</i> (L.) Merr.	Freshly pressed juice of fruit of <i>Ananas comosus</i> (L.) Merr.		
<i>Ananas comosus</i> (L.) Merr.	Fresh fruit of <i>Ananas comosus</i> (L.) Merr.		
<i>Angelica archangelica</i> L.	Fermented juice from roots of <i>Angelica archangelica</i> L. obtained by fresh pressing		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Angelica archangelica</i> L.	Fresh roots of <i>Angelica archangelica</i> L.		HAB
<i>Angelica archangelica</i> L.	Whole or cut, carefully dried rhizome and root of <i>Angelica archangelica</i> L.	AS	Ph.Eur.
Anhalonium	see <i>Lophophora williamsii</i> Coult.		
Anisum	see <i>Pimpinella anisum</i> L.		
<i>Anthyllis vulneraria</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Anthyllis vulneraria</i> L. at flowering		
<i>Apocynum cannabinum</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Apocynum cannabinum</i> L.		HAB
<i>Aralia racemosa</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Aralia racemosa</i> L.		HAB
<i>Arctium lappa</i> L.	Dried whole or cut roots of <i>Arctium lappa</i> L., <i>A. minus</i> (Hill) Bernh. and <i>A. tomentosum</i> Mill. also related species or hybrids ( <i>Asteraceae</i> ), collected in autumn of the first year or spring of the second year		DAC
<i>Arisaema triphyllum</i> (L.) Torr.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Arisaemia triphyllum</i> (L.) Torr., collected before the leaves develop. ( <i>Arum triphyllum</i> )		HAB
<i>Armoracia rusticana</i> Ph. Gärtn., B. Mey. et Scherb.	Fresh leaves of <i>Armoracia rusticana</i> Ph. Gaertn., B. Mey. et Scherb.		
<i>Armoracia rusticana</i> Ph. Gärtn., B. Mey. et Scherb.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Armoracia rusticana</i> Ph. Gaertn., B. Mey. et Scherb.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Arnica montana</i> L.	Volatile oil from the underground parts of <i>Arnica montana</i> L.		
<i>Arnica montana</i> L.	Fresh flower heads of <i>Arnica montana</i> L.		
<i>Arnica montana</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Arnica montana</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Arnica montana</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Arnica montana</i> L.		
<i>Arnica montana</i> L.	Dried whole or partly disintegrated flower heads of <i>Arnica montana</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Arnica montana</i> L.	Dried underground parts of <i>Arnica montana</i> L.		HAB
<i>Artemisia abrotanum</i> L.	Fresh young shoots and leaves of <i>Artemesia abrotanum</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Artemisia absinthium</i> L.	Fresh upper shoots with attached leaves and flowers and basal leaves of <i>Artemesia absinthium</i> L. separately or as a mixture.		HAB
<i>Artemisia absinthium</i> L.	Whole or cut, dried basal leaves or dried upper shoots and leaves, collected at flowering, or a mixture of these plant parts of <i>Artemesia absinthium</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Arum maculatum</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Arum maculatum</i> L., collected before the leaves develop.		HAB
<i>Arum triphyllum</i>	see <i>Arisaema triphyllum</i> (L.) Torr.		
<i>Arundo donax</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Arundo donax</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
Asa foetida	see <i>Ferula assa-foetida</i> L.		
<i>Asarum europaeum</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Asarum europaeum</i> L.		HAB
<i>Aspidium filix-mas</i>	see <i>Dryopteris filix-mas</i> (L.) Schott.		
<i>Aspidosperma quebracho-blanco</i> Schlechtend.	Dried crust of <i>Aspidosperma quebracho-blanco</i> Schlechtend.		DAC
<i>Astragalus exscapus</i> L.	Fresh flowering and in fruit rosettes of <i>Astragalus exscapus</i> L.		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L.	Whole or cut, dried roots and rhizome from 3- to 4-year old plants of <i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L., collected at flowering and with fruit		DAC
<i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L.	Fresh fruits of <i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L.		
<i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L.	Whole fresh plants of <i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L., without woody lower stem sections, collected at the end of flowering		HAB
<i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L.	Fresh whole flowering plants of <i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L. without woody lower stem sections, collected at end of flowering		
<i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L.		
<i>Avena sativa</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Avena sativa</i> L., collected when the grain has ripened to the milky stage		HAB
<i>Avena sativa</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Avena sativa</i> L., collected when the grain has ripened to the milky stage		
<i>Avena sativa</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Avena sativa</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Avena sativa</i> L.	Dried fruits of <i>Avena sativa</i> L. at the stage of germination		
<i>Avena sativa</i> L.	Dried milled fruits of <i>Avena sativa</i> L.	AS	
<i>Ballota nigra</i> L.	Fresh whole plant of <i>Ballota nigra</i> L. at flowering		Ph. Fr.
Balsamum peruvianum	see <i>Myroxylon balsamum</i> (L.) Harms		
Bambusa	see <i>Phyllostachys viridiglaucescens</i> (Carr.) A. et C. Riv.		
<i>Bambusa arundinacea</i> (Retz.) Willd, <i>Bambusa vulgaris</i> Schrad. ex J. C. Wendl.	Fresh shoot joints of <i>Bambusa arundinacea</i> (Retz.) Willd and/or <i>Bambusa vulgaris</i> Schrad. ex J. C. Wendl		
Belladonna	see <i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L.		
<i>Bellis perennis</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Bellis perennis</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Bellis perennis</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Bellis perennis</i> L. at flowering		
Benzoe	see <i>Styrax tonkinensis</i> (Pierre) Craib ex Hartwich		
<i>Berberis aquifolium</i>	see <i>Mahonia aquifolium</i> (Pursh) Nutt.		
<i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.	Fresh berries of <i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.		
<i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L. at flowering		
<i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.		
<i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.	Whole, fully ripened berries of <i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L. stripped off the fruit stalks		HAB
<i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.	Fresh whole plant including berries of <i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.		
<i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.	Fresh whole plant of <i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.		
<i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.	Dried bark of aerial and underground parts of <i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.		HAB
<i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.	Dried bark of underground parts of <i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.	Dried underground parts of <i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.		
<i>Beta vulgaris</i> L.	Saccharum Betae (crude beet sugar)		
Betonica	see <i>Stachys officinalis</i> (L.) Trev.		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Betula pendula</i> Roth	Sap obtained from holes drilled in the trunks of <i>Betula pendula</i> Roth		
<i>Betula pendula</i> Roth	Fresh young leaves of <i>Betula pendula</i> Roth		HAB
<i>Betula pendula</i> Roth	Dried white parts only of bark from trunk and branches of <i>Betula pendula</i> Roth		HAB
<i>Betula pendula</i> Roth, <i>Betula pubescens</i> Ehrhart	Tar extracted by dry distillation of the bark and branches of <i>Betula pendula</i> Roth and /or <i>Betula pubescens</i> Ehrh.		
<i>Betula pendula</i> Roth, <i>Betula pubescens</i> Ehrhart	Whole or fragmented dry leaves of <i>Betula pendula</i> Roth and /or <i>Betula pubescens</i> Ehrh., as well as hybrids of both species. (Birch leaf)		Ph. Eur.
<i>Betula pendula</i> Roth, <i>Betula pubescens</i> Ehrhart	Final carbon remaining from burning Birch wood	AS	HAB
Boldo	see <i>Peumus boldus</i> Mol.		
<i>Borago officinalis</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Borago officinalis</i> L.		
<i>Borago officinalis</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Borago officinalis</i> L. at flowering		
<i>Boswellia</i> species, particularly <i>Boswellia sacra</i> Flueckiger	Solidified gum-resin obtained from incisions in the trees of members of the genus <i>Boswellia</i> , particularly <i>Boswellia sacra</i> Flueckiger	AS	(DAC, Ph. Eur., B. serrata)
<i>Boswellia</i> species, particularly <i>Boswellia carteri</i> Birdwood	see <i>Boswellia</i> species, particularly <i>Boswellia sacra</i> Flueckiger		
<i>Botrychium lunaria</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Botrychium lunaria</i> L.		
<i>Brassica nigra</i> (L.) W.D.J. Koch	Dried ripe dried seeds of <i>Brassica nigra</i> (L.) W.D.J. Koch		DAC
<i>Bryonia cretica</i> L. ssp. <i>dioica</i> (Jacq.) Tutin	Fresh root of <i>Bryonia cretica</i> L. ssp. <i>dioica</i> (Jacq.) Tutin or <i>Bryonia alba</i> L., harvested before the plant comes into flower		HAB
<i>Bryonia cretica</i> L. ssp. <i>dioica</i> (Jacq.) Tutin	Fresh root of <i>Bryonia cretica</i> L. ssp. <i>dioica</i> (Jacq.) Tutin, harvested before shoots are produced		HAB
<i>Bryonia cretica</i> L. ssp. <i>dioica</i> (Jacq.) Tutin	Fresh underground parts of <i>Bryonia cretica</i> L. ssp. <i>dioica</i> (Jacq.) Tutin		Ph. Fr.
<i>Bryonia cretica</i> L. ssp. <i>dioica</i> (Jacq.) Tutin	Ether extracted dry root of <i>Bryonia cretica</i> L. ssp. <i>dioica</i> (Jacq.) Tutin or <i>Bronia alba</i> L., harvested before the plant comes into flower		
Bryophyllum	see <i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers.		
<i>Buxus sempervirens</i> L.	Fresh, young leafy branches of <i>Buxus sempervirens</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
Cactus grandiflorus	See <i>Selenicereus grandiflorus</i> (L.) Britt. et Rose		
Cajeputi aetheroleum	See <i>Melaleuca leucadendra</i> (L.) L.		
Calamus	See <i>Acorus calamus</i> L.		
<i>Calendula officinalis</i> L.	Fresh flower heads of <i>Calendula officinalis</i> L.		
<i>Calendula officinalis</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Calendula officinalis</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Calendula officinalis</i> L.	Dried flower heads of <i>Calendula officinalis</i> L.		Ph. Eur.
<i>Calendula officinalis</i> L.	Dried aerial parts of <i>Calendula officinalis</i> L., collected at flowering time		
<i>Capsella bursa-pastoris</i> (L.) Med.	Dried aerial parts of <i>Capsella bursa-pastoris</i> L. (Med.), collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Capsicum annuum</i> L.	Dried ripe fruits of <i>Capsicum annuum</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
Carduus benedictus	See <i>Cnicus benedictus</i> L.		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Carduus marianus</i>	See <i>Silybum marianum</i> (L.) Gaertn.		
<i>Carex arenaria</i> L.	Dried rhizome of <i>Carex arenaria</i> L., collected in spring		
<i>Carum carvi</i> L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the ripe fruits of <i>Carum carvi</i> L.	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Carum carvi</i> L.	Dried ripe fruits of <i>Carum carvi</i> L. (Caraway)	AS	HAB / Ph. Eur.
Caryophyllus	see <i>Syzygium aromaticum</i> (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry		
<i>Cassia angustifolia</i> Vahl., <i>Cassia senna</i> L.	Dried leaflets of <i>Cassia senna</i> L. or <i>Cassia angustifolia</i> Vahl.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Cassia angustifolia</i> Vahl., <i>Cassia senna</i> L.	Dried leaflets of <i>Cassia senna</i> L. ( <i>C. acutifolia</i> Delile), known as Alexandrian or Khartoum senna, or <i>Cassia angustifolia</i> Vahl., known as Tinnevelly senna, or a mixture of the two species. (Senna leaf)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Caulophyllum thalictroides</i> (L.) Michx.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Caulophyllum thalictroides</i> (L.) Michx., harvested in late summer		HAB
<i>Caulophyllum thalictroides</i> (L.) Michx.	Dried underground parts of <i>Caulophyllum thalictroides</i> (L.) Michx.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Ceanothus americanus</i> L.	Dried leaves of <i>Ceanothus americanus</i> L.		Ph. Fr. / HAB
<i>Centaurium erythraea</i> Rafn.	Fresh whole plants of <i>Centaurium erythraea</i> Rafn., collected at flowering time		
<i>Centaurium erythraea</i> Rafn.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Centaurium erythraea</i> Rafn.		
<i>Centaurium erythraea</i> Rafn.	Whole or fragmented dried flowering aerial parts of <i>Centaurium erythraea</i> Rafn s.l. including <i>C. majus</i> (H. et L.) Zeltner and <i>C. suffruticosum</i> (Griseb.) Ronn. (syn.: <i>Erythraea centaurium</i> Pers.; <i>C. umbellatum</i> Gilib.; <i>C. minus</i> Gars.)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Centella asiatica</i> (L.) Urb.	Dried whole plants of <i>Centella asiatica</i> (L.) Urb.		Ph. Fr.
Cepa	see <i>Allium cepa</i> L.		
<i>Cephaelis ipecacuanha</i> (Brot.) A. Rich.	Fragmented and dried underground organs of <i>Cephaelis ipecacuanha</i> (Brot.) A. Rich., known as Matto Grosso ipecacuanha		HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Cephaelis ipecacuanha</i> (Brot.) A. Rich., <i>Cephaelis acuminata</i> Karsten	Fragmented and dried underground organs of <i>Cephaelis ipecacuanha</i> (Brot.) A. Rich., known as Matto Grosso ipecacuanha, or of <i>Cephaelis acuminata</i> Karsten, known as Costa Rica ipecacuanha, or of a mixture of both species. (Ipecacuanhae root)		Ph. Fr. / Ph. Eur.
<i>Cetraria islandica</i> (L.) Ach.	Whole or cut dried thallus of <i>Cetraria islandica</i> (L.) Acharius s.l. (Iceland moss)	AS	HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Chamaelirium luteum</i> (L.) A. Gray	Dried underground parts of <i>Chamaelirium luteum</i> (L.) A. Gray		
<i>Chamomilla recutita</i> (L.) Rauschert	Fresh flower heads of <i>Chamomilla recutita</i> (L.) Rauschert		
<i>Chamomilla recutita</i> (L.) Rauschert	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Chamomilla recutita</i> (L.) Rauschert		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Chamomilla recutita</i> (L.) Rauschert	Fresh underground parts of <i>Chamomilla recutita</i> (L.) Rauschert		
<i>Chamomilla recutita</i> (L.) Rauschert	Dried capitula of <i>Matricaria recutita</i> L. ( <i>Chamomilla recutita</i> (L.) Rauschert) (Matricaria flower)		Ph. Eur. / USP

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Chamomilla recutita</i> (L.) Rauschert	Dried root of <i>Chamomilla recutita</i> (L.) Rauschert		
<i>Cheiranthus cheiri</i> L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of <i>Cheiranthus cheiri</i> L.		
<i>Chelidonium majus</i> L.	Fresh rhizome and adherent roots of <i>Chelidonium majus</i> L., collected during late autumn or on the appearance of the first shoots		HAB
<i>Chelidonium majus</i> L.	Fresh flowers of <i>Chelidonium majus</i> L.		HAB
<i>Chelidonium majus</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Chelidonium majus</i> L.		
<i>Chelidonium majus</i> L.	Fresh whole plants of <i>Chelidonium majus</i> L., collected at flowering time		Ph. Fr.
<i>Chimaphila umbellata</i> (L.) Barton	Dried aerial parts of <i>Chimaphila umbellata</i> (L.) Barton		Ph. Fr.
China	see <i>Cinchona pubescens</i> Vahl		
<i>Chlorophyceae</i>	Fresh green algae from the <i>Chlorophyceae</i> species.		
<i>Chondodendron tomentosum</i> Ruiz et Pav.	Dried roots of <i>Chondodendron tomentosum</i> Ruiz et Pav.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Chrysanthemum vulgare</i> (L.) Bernh.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Chrysanthemum vulgare</i> (L.) Bernh., collected at flowering time, without stems		HAB
<i>Chrysosplenium alternifolium</i> L.	Whole fresh plants of <i>Chrysosplenium alternifolium</i> L.		
<i>Cichorium intybus</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Cichorium intybus</i> L.		HAB
<i>Cichorium intybus</i> L.	Dried whole plants of <i>Cichorium intybus</i> L. var. <i>intybus</i> and <i>Cichorium intybus</i> L. var. <i>sativum</i> DC, collected at flowering time. The tough middle stem sections are not used.		HAB
<i>Cichorium intybus</i> L.	Dried root of <i>Cichorium intybus</i> L. ssp. <i>intybus</i> and <i>Cichorium intybus</i> L. ssp. <i>sativum</i> (DC) Janchen, collected at flowering time		
<i>Cimicifuga racemosa</i> (L.) Nutt.	Fresh rhizome and adherent roots of <i>Cimicifuga racemosa</i> (L.) Nutt.		HAB
<i>Cinchona pubescens</i> Vahl	Whole or cut dried bark of <i>Cinchona pubescens</i> Vahl ( <i>Cinchona succirubra</i> Pavon), of <i>C. calisaya</i> (Weddell), of <i>C. ledgeriana</i> (Moens ex Trimen) or of its varieties or hybrids. (Cinchona bark)		HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Cineraria maritima</i>	see <i>Senecio bicolor</i> (Willd.) Tod.		
<i>Cinnamomum verum</i> J. S. Presl	Dried bark, freed from the outer cork and the underlying parenchyma, of the shoots grown on cut stock of <i>Cinnamomum zeylanicum</i> Nees. (syn.: <i>Cinnamomum verum</i> J. S. Presl) (Cinnamon)		HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Cissus gongylodes</i> (Bak.) Burch.	Fresh aerial roots of <i>Cissus gongylodes</i> (Bak.) Burch.		
<i>Citrullus colocynthis</i> (L.) Schrad.	Dried pulp of <i>Citrullus colocynthis</i> (L.) Schrad.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Citrullus colocynthis</i> (L.) Schrad.	Fresh peeled unripe fruit of <i>Citrullus colocynthis</i> (L.) Schrad. without seeds		
<i>Citrullus colocynthis</i> (L.) Schrad.	Dried peeled fruit of <i>Citrullus colocynthis</i> (L.) Schrad. without seeds		HAB
<i>Citrus limon</i> (L.) Burm. f.	Essential oil obtained by suitable mechanical means, without the aid of heat, from the fresh peel of <i>Citrus limon</i> (L.) Burm. fil. (Lemon oil)	AS	Ph. Eur.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Citrus limon</i> (L.) Burm. f.	Fresh pressed juice from the fruit of <i>Citrus limon</i> (L.) Burm. fil.	AS	
<i>Citrus limon</i> (L.) Burm. f.	Fresh fruit of <i>Citrus limon</i> (L.) Burm. fil.		
<i>Citrus medica</i> ssp. <i>limonum</i> (Risso) Wight et Arnott	Fresh fruit of <i>Citrus medica</i> ssp. <i>limonum</i> (Risso) Wight et Arnott		
<i>Cladina rangiferina</i> (L.) Nyl.	Dried thallus of <i>Cladina rangiferina</i> (L.) Nyl.		
<i>Claviceps purpurea</i> (Fr.) Tul.	Dried Sclerotium of <i>Claviceps purpurea</i> (Fries) Tulasne which has grown on Rye ( <i>Secale cereale</i> L.)		HAB
<i>Clematis recta</i> L.	Fresh, young leafy branches of <i>Clematis recta</i> L., collected at flowering time		Ph. Fr.
<i>Cnicus benedictus</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Cnicus benedictus</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
Cocculus	see <i>Anamirta cocculus</i> Wight et Arn.		
<i>Cochlearia armoracia</i>	see <i>Armoracia rusticana</i> Ph. Gärtn., B. Mey. et Scherb.		
<i>Cochlearia officinalis</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Cochlearia officinalis</i> L., collected at the start of flowering time		HAB
<i>Cochlearia officinalis</i> L.	Dried aerial parts of <i>Cochlearia officinalis</i> L., collected at the start of flowering time	AS	
<i>Coffea arabica</i> L.	Dried roasted seeds of <i>Coffea arabica</i> L.		
<i>Coffea arabica</i> L.	Dried green seeds of <i>Coffea arabica</i> L.		
<i>Coffea arabica</i> L.	Ripe, dried, unroasted seeds of <i>Coffea arabica</i> L. with the seed coat (silver skin) largely removed	AS	HAB
<i>Colchicum autumnale</i> L.	Fresh corms of <i>Colchicum autumnale</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Colchicum autumnale</i> L.	Fresh corms of <i>Colchicum autumnale</i> L., collected at flowering time and free from fibrous roots		HAB
<i>Colchicum autumnale</i> L.	Fresh whole plant of <i>Colchicum autumnale</i> L. at flowering time		
<i>Collinsonia canadensis</i> L.	Dried rhizome of <i>Collinsonia canadensis</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
Colocynthis	see <i>Citrullus colocynthis</i> (L.) Schrad.		
<i>Commiphora</i> Jacq. Species	Gum-resin, hardened in air, obtained by incision or produced by spontaneous exudation from the stem and branches of <i>Commiphora molmol</i> Engler and/or other species of <i>Commiphora</i> (Myrrh)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Conium maculatum</i> L.	Fresh flowerheads of <i>Conium maculatum</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Conium maculatum</i> L.	Fresh, aerial parts of the flowering, but not yet fruiting specimens of <i>Conium maculatum</i> L.		HAB
<i>Convallaria majalis</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Convallaria majalis</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Convallaria majalis</i> L.	Fresh whole plants of <i>Convallaria majalis</i> L., collected at flowering time		
<i>Coriandrum sativum</i> L.	Dried cremocarp of <i>Coriandrium sativum</i> L.		Ph. Eur.
<i>Corydalis cava</i> (L.) Clairv.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Corydalis cava</i> (L.) Clairv.		
<i>Corylus avellana</i> L.	Pressed seeds of <i>Corylus avellana</i> L.	AS	

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Crataegus laevigata</i> (Poir.) DC. and <i>Crataegus monogyna</i> Jacq. emend. Lindman	Fresh leaves and ripe fruit of <i>Crataegus laevigata</i> (Poir.) DC. and <i>Crataegus monogyna</i> Jacq. emend. Lindman		
<i>Crataegus laevigata</i> (Poir.) DC., <i>Crataegus monogyna</i> Jacq. emend. Lindm.	Fresh ripe fruits of <i>Crataegus laevigata</i> (Poir.) DC., <i>Crataegus monogyna</i> Jacq. emend. Lindm., their hybrids and mixtures thereof		HAB
<i>Crataegus laevigata</i> (Poir.) DC., <i>Crataegus monogyna</i> Jacq. emend. Lindm.	Dried leaves of <i>Crataegus monogyna</i> Jacq. emend. Lindm. or <i>Crataegus laevigata</i> (Poir.) DC. or other European <i>Crataegus</i> species		Ph. Eur. (Crataegi folium cum flore)
<i>Crocus sativus</i> L.	Dried stigmas of <i>Crocus sativa</i> L., usually held together by a short section of the style. (Saffron for Homoeopathic preparations)		HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Croton tiglium</i> L.	Dried seeds of <i>Croton tiglium</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Cucurbita pepo</i> L.	Fresh flowers of <i>Cucurbita pepo</i> L.		
<i>Cucurbita pepo</i> L.	Pulp of fresh pumpkins of <i>Cucurbita pepo</i> L., harvested in autumn		
<i>Cupressus sempervirens</i> L.	Fresh leafy branches of <i>Cupressus sempervirens</i> L. with cones		Ph. Fr.
<i>Curcuma xanthorrhiza</i> Roxb.	Dried rhizome, cut in slices, of <i>Curcuma xanthorrhiza</i> Roxb. ( <i>C. xanthorrhiza</i> D. Dietrich). (Turmeric Javanese)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Cyclamen purpurascens</i> Mill.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Cyclamen purpurascens</i> Mill., collected during autumn.		HAB
<i>Cydonia oblonga</i> Mill.	Fresh ripe fruits of <i>Cydonia oblonga</i> Mill.		
<i>Cymbopogon winterianus</i> Jowitt and other <i>Cymbopogon</i> species	Oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh or partially dried aerial parts of <i>Cymbopogon winterianus</i> Jowitt (Citronella oil)		Ph. Eur.
<i>Cynara scolymus</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Cynara scolymus</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Cypripedium pubescens</i> Willd.	Dried rhizome of <i>Cypripedium pubescens</i> Willd.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Cytisus scoparius</i> (L.) Link.	Fresh young tips of shoots of <i>Cytisus scoparius</i> (L.) Link. with flowers and leaves		Ph. Fr.
<i>Cytisus scoparius</i> (L.) Link.	Freshly stripped flowers of <i>Cytisus scoparius</i> (L.) Link., plus leaves and young tips of shoots accumulated during harvesting		HAB
<i>Cytisus scoparius</i> (L.) Link.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Cytisus scoparius</i> (L.) Link at flowering time		
<i>Daphne mezereum</i> L.	Fresh bark from the branches of <i>Daphne mezereum</i> L.		
<i>Daphne mezereum</i> L.	Fresh bark from the branches of <i>Daphne mezereum</i> L., collected prior to flowering		HAB
<i>Datura stramonium</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Datura stramonium</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Delphinium staphisagria</i> L.	Dried ripe seeds of <i>Delphinium staphisagria</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Digitalis purpurea</i> L.	Fresh leaves from one or two-year-old specimens of <i>Digitalis purpurea</i> L., collected at the start of flowering		HAB

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Dolichos pruriens</i>	see <i>Mucuna pruriens</i> (L.) DC.		
<i>Drosera rotundifolia</i> L., <i>Drosera intermedia</i> Hayne, <i>Drosera anglica</i> Huds.	Whole fresh plants of <i>Drosera rotundifolia</i> L., <i>Drosera intermedia</i> Hayne and <i>Drosera anglica</i> Huds., single species or mixed, collected at the start of flowering		HAB
<i>Drosera rotundifolia</i> L., <i>Drosera intermedia</i> Hayne, <i>Drosera anglica</i> Huds.	Whole fresh plants of <i>Drosera rotundifolia</i> L., <i>Drosera intermedia</i> Hayne and <i>Drosera anglica</i> Huds.		
<i>Dryopteris filix-mas</i> (L.) Schott.	Fresh rhizome of <i>Dryopteris filix-mas</i> (L.) Schott, with roots		
<i>Dryopteris filix-mas</i> (L.) Schott.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Dryopteris filix-mas</i> (L.) Schott.		
<i>Dryopteris filix-mas</i> (L.) Schott.	Ripe spores of <i>Dryopteris filix-mas</i> (L.) Schott.		
Dulcamara	see <i>Solanum dulcamara</i> L.		
<i>Echinacea angustifolia</i> DC., <i>Echinacea pallida</i> (Nutt.) Nutt.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Echinacea</i> <i>angustifolia</i> DC. and <i>Echinacea pallida</i> (Nutt.) Nutt., single species or mixed		HAB
<i>Echinacea pallida</i> (Nutt.) Nutt.	Fresh flowering plants of <i>Echinacea pallida</i> (Nutt.) Nutt.		
<i>Echinacea pallida</i> (Nutt.) Nutt.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Echinacea pallida</i> (Nutt.) Nutt., collected at flowering time		
<i>Echinacea pallida</i> (Nutt.) Nutt.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Echinacea pallida</i> (Nutt.) Nutt.		
<i>Echinacea purpurea</i> (L.) Moench	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Echinacea purpurea</i> (L.) Moench		HAB
<i>Echinacea purpurea</i> (L.) Moench	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Echinacea purpurea</i> (L.) Moench, collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Equisetum arvense</i> L.	Fresh green sterile aerial parts of <i>Equisetum</i> <i>arvense</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Equisetum arvense</i> L.	Whole or cut, dried sterile aerial parts of <i>Equisetum</i> <i>arvense</i> L. ( <i>Equisetum</i> stem)		Ph.Eur.
<i>Equisetum hiemale</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Equisetum hiemale</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Erythraea centaurium</i>	see <i>Centaurium erythraea</i> Rafn.		
<i>Eschscholzia californica</i> Cham.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Eschscholzia</i> <i>californica</i> Cham.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Eucalyptus globulus</i> Labill.	Oil obtained by steam distillation and rectification from the fresh leaves or the fresh terminal branchlets of various species of <i>Eucalyptus</i> rich in 1,8-cineole. The species mainly used are <i>Eucalyptus globulus</i> Labill., <i>Eucalyptus polybractea</i> R.T.Baker and <i>Eucalyptus smithii</i> R.T.Baker	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Eucalyptus globulus</i> Labill.	Fresh leaves of <i>Eucalyptus globulus</i> Labill.		
<i>Eucalyptus globulus</i> Labill.	Whole or cut dried leaves of older branches of <i>Eucalyptus globulus</i> Labill. ( <i>Eucalyptus</i> leaf)		HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Eugenia caryophyllata</i>	see <i>Syzygium aromaticum</i> (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry		
<i>Eupatorium cannabinum</i> L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of <i>Eupatorium</i> <i>cannabinum</i> L.		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Eupatorium perfoliatum</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Eupatorium perfoliatum</i> L., collected at start of flowering		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Euphorbia milii</i> Des Moul.	Fresh leaves of <i>Euphorbia milii</i> Des Moul.		
<i>Euphorbia resinifera</i> O.C. Berg.	Hardened latex from <i>Euphorbia resinifera</i> Berger		HAB
<i>Euphrasia rostkoviana</i> Hayne	Whole fresh plants of <i>Euphrasia stricta</i> D. Wolff ex F.J. Lehm. and <i>Euphrasia rostkoviana</i> Hayne, their hybrids and mixtures thereof, collected at flowering time		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Fagus silvatica</i> L.	Branch and trunk wood of <i>Fagus silvatica</i> L.		
<i>Ferula assa-foetida</i> L.	Dried gum resin from <i>Ferula</i> species such as <i>Ferula assa-foetida</i> L. and <i>Ferula foetida</i> (Bunge) Regel. ( <i>Asa foetida</i> )		HAB
Fewerfew	see <i>Chrysanthemum vulgare</i> (L.) Bernh.		
<i>Filipendula ulmaria</i> (L.) Maxim.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Filipendula ulmaria</i> (L.) Maxim.		HAB
Filix-mas	see <i>Dryopteris filix-mas</i> (L.) Schott.		
<i>Foeniculum vulgare</i> Mill.	Essential oil from the ripe fruits of <i>Foeniculum vulgare</i> Miller ssp. <i>vulgare</i> var. <i>vulgare</i>	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Foeniculum vulgare</i> Mill.	Dried cremocarps and mericarps of <i>Foeniculum vulgare</i> Miller ssp. <i>vulgare</i> var. <i>dulce</i> (Miller) (Fennel, sweet)	AS	HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Fragaria vesca</i> L.	Fresh, ripe false-fruits of <i>Fragaria vesca</i> L.		
<i>Fragaria vesca</i> L.	Dried, whole or cut leaves, collected at flowering time of <i>Fragaria vesca</i> L., <i>Fragaria moschata</i> West, <i>Fragaria viridis</i> West., <i>Fragaria x ananassa</i> (Duch.) Guedes ( <i>Rosaceae</i> ), their hybrids as well as hybrids with other <i>Fragaria</i> species or mixtures of them	AS	DAC
Frangula	see <i>Rhamnus frangula</i> L.		
<i>Fraxinus americana</i> L.	Dried bark from branches of <i>Fraxinus americana</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> L.	Whole fresh thallus of <i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> L.	Fragmented dried thallus of <i>Fucus vesiculosus</i> L., or <i>F. serratus</i> L., or <i>Ascophyllum nodosum</i> Le Jolis. (Kelp)		Ph. Eur.
<i>Fumaria officinalis</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Fumaria officinalis</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Galanthus nivalis</i> L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of <i>Galanthus nivalis</i> L.		
Gallae turcicae	Oak apples produced on young shoots of <i>Quercus infectoria</i> Olivier by the sting of the dyer's gall wasp <i>Andricus gallae tinctoriae</i> Olivier		HAB
Gallae turcicae	Oak apples produced on young shoots of <i>Quercus infectoria</i> Olivier by the sting of the dyer's gall wasp <i>Andricus gallae tinctoriae</i> Olivier including gall wasps or larvae contained inside		
<i>Gelsemium sempervirens</i> (L.) Jaume St. - Hil.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Gelsemium sempervirens</i> (L.) Jaume St.-Hil.		HAB
<i>Gelsemium sempervirens</i> (L.) Jaume St. - Hil.	Dried underground parts of <i>Gelsemium sempervirens</i> (L.) Jaume St.-Hil.		Ph. Fr.
Genista scoparia	see <i>Cytisus scoparius</i> (L.) Link.		
<i>Gentiana acaulis</i> L.s.str.	Fresh whole plants of <i>Gentiana acaulis</i> L.s.str.		
<i>Gentiana lutea</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Gentiana lutea</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Gentiana lutea</i> L.	Dried, fragmented underground organs of <i>Gentiana lutea</i> L. (Gentian root)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Geraniaceae</i>	see <i>Pelargonium</i> species		
<i>Geranium robertianum</i> L.	Fresh whole flowering plants of <i>Geranium robertianum</i> L.		
<i>Geranium robertianum</i> L.	Dried aerial parts of <i>Geranium robertianum</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Geum urbanum</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Geum urbanum</i> L.		HAB
<i>Ginkgo biloba</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Ginkgo biloba</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
Ginseng	see <i>Panax pseudoginseng</i> Wall.		
<i>Glechoma hederacea</i> L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of <i>Glechoma hederacea</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Glechoma hederacea</i> L.	Dried whole plants of <i>Glechoma hederacea</i> L., collected at flowering time.		
<i>Glycyrrhiza glabra</i> L.	Dried unpeeled or peeled, whole or cut root and stolons of <i>Glycyrrhiza glabra</i> L. (Liquorice root)	AS	Ph. Eur. / USP
Gnaphalium	see <i>Leontopodium alpinum</i> Cass.		
<i>Gramineae</i>	Dried inflorescence of several <i>Gramineae</i> species obtained from hey (hey flowers, hey blossoms)		
<i>Grindelia squarrosa</i> (Pursh.) Dun.	Fresh flowering, aerial parts of <i>Grindelia squarrosa</i> (Pursh.) Dun.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L.	Fresh bark and leaves of <i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L.		
<i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L.	Fresh bark of <i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L.		
<i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L.		HAB
<i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L.	Fresh flowering branches of <i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L., collected in late autumn. (Hamamelis extract)		HAB 1934
<i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L.	Dried bark from the stems and branches of <i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L.		HAB
<i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L.	Dried leaves and dried bark from the stems and branches of <i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L.		
<i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L.	Whole or cut dried leaf of <i>Hamamelis virginiana</i> L. (Hamamelis leaf)		Ph. Eur.
<i>Harpagophytum procumbens</i> (Burch.) DC	The bulbous secondary storage root of <i>Harpagophytum procumbens</i> (Burch.) DC		Ph. Fr.
<i>Hedera helix</i> L.	Fresh young leafy branches of <i>Hedera helix</i> L., collected at beginning of flowering time		Ph. Fr. / Ph. Eur.
<i>Helianthus tuberosus</i> L.	Fresh tubers of <i>Helianthus tuberosus</i> L., collected in late autumn		HAB
<i>Helleborus foetidus</i> L.	Whole fresh leaves and fresh roots without woody parts collected in summer and fresh flowers shoots collected in winter of <i>Helleborus foetidus</i> L.		
<i>Helleborus niger</i> L.	Fresh whole flowering plants of <i>Helleborus niger</i> L.		
<i>Helleborus niger</i> L.	Fresh whole plants of <i>Helleborus niger</i> L.		
<i>Helleborus niger</i> L.	Whole fresh plant collected in summer and fresh flowering shoots collected in winter of <i>Helleborus niger</i> L.		
Helonias dioica	see <i>Chamaelirium luteum</i> (L.) A. Gray		
<i>Heracleum mantegazzianum</i> Sommier & Levier	Whole fresh plant of <i>Heracleum mantegazzianum</i>		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Hibiscus sabdariffa</i> L.	Whole or cut dried calyces and epicalyces of <i>Hibiscus sabdariffa</i> L., collected during fruiting. (Roselle)	AS	Ph.Eur.
<i>Hippophaë rhamnoides</i> L.	Fresh branches of <i>Hippophaë rhamnoides</i> L. with fruit		
<i>Hippophaë rhamnoides</i> L.	Fresh fruits of <i>Hippophaë rhamnoides</i> L.		
<i>Hippophaë rhamnoides</i> L.	Fatty oil obtained from the seeds and/or fruit of <i>Hippophaë rhamnoides</i> L.		
<i>Hordeum vulgare</i> L.	Extract obtained from dried germinated fruits of <i>Hordeum vulgare</i> L.	AS	
<i>Hordeum vulgare</i> L.	Dried, germinated fruits of <i>Hordeum vulgare</i> L. without primary roots	AS	
<i>Hoya carnosa</i> (L.f.) R. Br.	Nectar of the flowers of <i>Hoya carnosa</i> (L.f.) R. Br.		
<i>Humulus lupulus</i> L.	Fresh creepers with leaves and fruits of <i>Humulus lupulus</i> L.		
<i>Humulus lupulus</i> L.	Fresh female inflorescences of <i>Humulus lupulus</i> L., collected before the seeds have ripened and containing as few seeds as possible		HAB
<i>Humulus lupulus</i> L.	Dried, generally whole, female inflorescences of <i>Humulus lupulus</i> L. (Hop strobile)		Ph. Eur.
<i>Hydrastis canadensis</i> L.	Dried underground parts of <i>Hydrastis canadensis</i> L.		HAB / USP / Ph. Fr.
<i>Hydrocotyle asiatica</i>	see <i>Centella asiatica</i> (L.) Urb.		
<i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of <i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L.		
<i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Hypericum perforatum</i> L.	Fresh flowers of <i>Hypericum perforatum</i> L.		
<i>Hypericum perforatum</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Hypericum perforatum</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Hypericum perforatum</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Hypericum perforatum</i> L., collected at flowering time and extracted in oil while exposed to the sun		
<i>Hypogymnia physodes</i> (L.) Nyl.	Dried thallus of <i>Hypogymnia physodes</i> (L.) Nyl. ( <i>Parmelia physodes</i> (L.) Ach.)		
Ignatia	See <i>Strychnos ignatii</i> Bergius		
Imperatoria ostruthium	See <i>Peucedanum ostruthium</i> (L.) W. D. J. Koch		
Ipecacuanha	See <i>Cephaelis ipecacuanha</i> (Brot.) A. Rich.		
<i>Iris germanica</i> L.	Fresh rhizome of <i>Iris germanica</i> L.		
<i>Iris germanica</i> L.	Dried peeled rhizome of <i>Iris germanica</i> L., <i>Iris germanica</i> var. <i>florentina</i> L. and <i>Iris pallida</i> Lamarck		
<i>Iris versicolor</i> L.	Fresh rhizome including roots of <i>Iris versicolor</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Iris versicolor</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Iris versicolor</i> L.		HAB
<i>Juglans regia</i> L.	Fresh outer membrane from the seed of <i>Juglans regia</i> L.		
<i>Juglans regia</i> L.	Dried leaves of <i>Juglans regia</i> L.		DAC
<i>Juniperus communis</i> L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the ripe, non-fermented berry cones of <i>Juniperus communis</i> L. (Juniper oil)	AS	Ph.Eur.
<i>Juniperus communis</i> L.	Fresh ripe cone berry of <i>Juniperus communis</i> L.		
<i>Juniperus communis</i> L.	Dried tips of shoots of <i>Juniperus communis</i> L.		
<i>Juniperus communis</i> L.	Dried ripe cone berry of <i>Juniperus communis</i> L.	AS	HAB / Ph.Eur.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Juniperus sabina</i> L.	Fresh, still unligified, growing tips of twigs of <i>Juniperus sabina</i> L., with adherent leaves		HAB
<i>Kalanchoe daigremontiana</i> Hamet et Perr. de la Bâthie and <i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers.	Fresh leaves of <i>Kalanchoe daigremontiana</i> Hamet et Perr. de la Bâthie and <i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers., harvested in the first year of growth		HAB
<i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers.	Fresh pressed juice from leaves of <i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers.		
<i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers.	Fresh leaves of <i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers.		
<i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers.	Fresh leaves of <i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers., harvested in the first year of growth		HAB
<i>Kalmia latifolia</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Kalmia latifolia</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Krameria triandra</i> Ruiz et Pav.	Dried, usually fragmented underground organs of <i>Krameria triandra</i> Ruiz and Pavon. (Rhatany root)		HAB / Ph. Eur.
Kreosotum	see <i>Fagus silvatica</i> L.		
<i>Lamium album</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of <i>Lamium album</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
Lappa major	see <i>Arctium lappa</i> L.		
<i>Larix decidua</i> Mill.	Balsam obtained from holes drilled in the trunks of <i>Larix decidua</i> Mill. (Terebinthina laricina )	AS	HAB
<i>Laurus nobilis</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Laurus nobilis</i> L.		
<i>Lavandula angustifolia</i> Mill.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the flowering tops of <i>Lavandula angustifolia</i> Miller ( <i>Lavandula officinalis</i> Chaix) (Lavender oil)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Lavandula angustifolia</i> Mill.	Fresh flowers of <i>Lavandula angustifolia</i> Mill.		HAB / (Ph. Fr.)
<i>Lavandula angustifolia</i> Mill.	Dried flower of <i>Lavandula angustifolia</i> P. Mill. ( <i>L. officinalis</i> Chaix) (Lavender flower)		HAB / Ph.Eur.
<i>Ledum palustre</i> L.	Dried tips of twigs of <i>Ledum palustre</i> L.		HAB
<i>Leontopodium alpinum</i> Cass.	Whole fresh plants of <i>Leontopodium alpinum</i> Cass.		
<i>Leontopodium alpinum</i> Cass.	Whole dried flowering plants of <i>Leontopodium alpinum</i> Cass.		
<i>Leonurus cardiaca</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Leonurus cardiaca</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Leptandra virginica</i> (L.) Nutt.	Dried underground parts of <i>Leptandra virginica</i> (L.) Nutt.		
<i>Levisticum officinale</i> W. D. J. Koch	Whole or cut dried rhizome and root of <i>Levisticum officinale</i> Koch. (Lovage root)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Levisticum officinale</i> W. D. J. Koch	Whole fresh plant of <i>Levisticum officinale</i> W. D. J. Koch		
<i>Levisticum officinale</i> W. D. J. Koch	Fresh underground parts of <i>Levisticum officinale</i> W. D. J. Koch		
<i>Lilium lancifolium</i> Thunb.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Lilium lancifolium</i> Thunb.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Lilium lancifolium</i> Thunb.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Lilium lancifolium</i> Thunb., collected at flowering time and including bulbules		
<i>Lilium tigrinum</i>	See <i>Lilium lancifolium</i> Thunb.		
<i>Linum usitatissimum</i> L.	Fatty oil from the seeds of <i>Linum usitatissimum</i> L.	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Linum usitatissimum</i> L.	Dried ripe seeds of <i>Linum usitatissimum</i> L. (Linseed)		Ph. Eur.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Litsea cubeba</i> Pers.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the fruit of <i>Litsea cubeba</i> Pers.	AS	
<i>Lobaria pulmonaria</i> (L.) Hoffm.	Dried thallus of <i>Lobaria pulmonaria</i> (L.) Hoffm.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Lobelia inflata</i> L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of <i>Lobelia inflata</i> L.		
<i>Lobelia inflata</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Lobelia inflata</i> L.		HAB
<i>Lophophora williamsii</i> Coult.	Whole fresh plants of <i>Lophophora williamsii</i> Coult.		
<i>Lycopersicon lycopersicum</i> (L.) Karst. ex Farw.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Lycopersicon lycopersicum</i> (L.) Karst. ex Farw., collected at flowering time with unripe fruit		HAB 34
<i>Lycopodium clavatum</i> L.	Whole spore-bearing plant of <i>Lycopodium clavatum</i> L.		
<i>Lycopodium clavatum</i> L.	Dried ripe spores of <i>Lycopodium clavatum</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Lycopus virginicus</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Lycopus virginicus</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Lycopus virginicus</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of <i>Lycopus virginicus</i> L.		
<i>Lysimachia nummularia</i> L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of <i>Lysimachia nummularia</i> L.		
<i>Mahonia aquifolium</i> (Pursh) Nutt.	Dried bark from branches and twigs and dried tips of twigs of <i>Mahonia aquifolium</i> (Pursh) Nutt.		HAB
Majorana	see <i>Origanum majorana</i> L.		
Maltum	see <i>Hordeum vulgare</i> L.		
<i>Malus sylvestris</i> Mill.	Core from fresh fruit of <i>Malus sylvestris</i> Mill. without kernel		
<i>Malus sylvestris</i> Mill.	Fresh unripe fruit of <i>Malus sylvestris</i> Mill.		
<i>Malva sylvestris</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of <i>Malva sylvestris</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Malva sylvestris</i> L.	Whole or fragmented dried flower of <i>Malva sylvestris</i> L. or its cultivated varieties. (Mallow flower)		HAB / Ph.Eur.
<i>Mandragora officinarum</i> L.	Fresh root of <i>Mandragora officinarum</i> L.		
<i>Mandragora officinarum</i> L.	Dried roots of <i>Mandragora officinarum</i> L. and <i>Mandragora autumnalis</i> Bertol.		HAB
<i>Marrubium vulgare</i> L.	Dried aerial parts of <i>Marrubium vulgare</i> L., collected at flowering time		
Marum verum	see <i>Teucrium marum</i> L.		
<i>Medicago sativa</i> L.	Whole fresh plants of <i>Medicago sativa</i> L., collected at flowering time		Ph. Fr.
<i>Melaleuca leucadendra</i> (L.) L.	Rectified essential oil obtained from fresh leaves and branches of different <i>Melaleuca</i> subspecies	AS	
<i>Melilotus officinalis</i> (L.) Pall.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Melilotus officinalis</i> (L.) Pall. collected at flowering time		HAB / Ph. Fr.
Melissa indicum	see <i>Cymbopogon winterianus</i> Jowitt and other <i>Cymbopogon</i> sp.		
<i>Melissa officinalis</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Melissa officinalis</i> L.		
<i>Melissa officinalis</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Melissa officinalis</i> L., before flowering time		Ph. Fr.
<i>Melissa officinalis</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Melissa officinalis</i> L.		
<i>Melissa officinalis</i> L.	Dried leaf of <i>Melissa officinalis</i> L. (Melissa leaf)		Ph. Eur.
<i>Melissa officinalis</i> L.	Dried aerial parts of <i>Melissa officinalis</i> L.		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Mentha piperita</i> L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh aerial parts of the flowering plant of <i>Mentha x piperita</i> L. (Peppermint oil)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Mentha piperita</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of <i>Mentha x piperita</i> L.		
<i>Menyanthes trifoliata</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of <i>Menyanthes trifoliata</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Mercurialis perennis</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Mercurialis perennis</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Mercurialis perennis</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of <i>Mercurialis perennis</i> L.		
<i>Mercurialis perennis</i> L.	Whole dried flowering plant of <i>Mercurialis perennis</i> L.		
Mezereum	See <i>Daphne mezereum</i> L.		
Millefolium	See <i>Achillea millefolium</i> L.		
<i>Momordica balsamina</i> L.	Fresh fruit of <i>Momordica balsamina</i> L.		
<i>Monotropa uniflora</i> L.	Whole dried plant of <i>Monotropa uniflora</i> L.		
<i>Mucuna pruriens</i> (L.) DC	Dried hairs from the fruits of <i>Mucuna pruriens</i> (L.) DC		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Myristica fragrans</i> Van Houtte	Dried seed kernel of <i>Myristica fragrans</i> Van Houtte		Ph. Fr.
<i>Myristica fragrans</i> Van Houtte	Dried, usually lime-treated seeds of <i>Myristica fragrans</i> Van Houtte, with aril and testa removed		HAB
<i>Myristica sebifera</i>	see <i>Viola sebifera</i> Aubl.		
<i>Myroxylon balsamum</i> (L.) Harms	Balsam obtained from the scorched and wounded trunk of <i>Myroxylon balsamum</i> (L.) Harms var. <i>pereirae</i> (Royle) Harms. (Peru Balsam)	AS	Ph. Eur.
Myrrha	see <i>Commiphora</i> Jacq. species		
<i>Nasturtium officinale</i> R. Br.	Whole fresh plant of <i>Nasturtium officinale</i> R. Br.		
<i>Nasturtium officinale</i> R. Br.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Nasturtium officinale</i> R. Br., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Nicotiana tabacum</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Nicotiana tabacum</i> L.		HAB
<i>Nicotiana tabacum</i> L.	Dried fermented leaves of <i>Nicotiana tabacum</i> L.		
<i>Nicotiana tabacum</i> L.	Dried unfermented leaves of <i>Nicotiana tabacum</i> L.		HAB
<i>Nux moschata</i>	see <i>Myristica fragrans</i> Van Houtte		
<i>Nux vomica</i>	see <i>Strychnos nux-vomica</i> L.		
<i>Ocimum basilicum</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Ocimum basilicum</i> L., collected prior to flowering		HAB
<i>Ocimum basilicum</i> L.	Dried flowering aerial parts of <i>Ocimum basilicum</i> L.	AS	
Olibanum	see <i>Boswellia</i> species		
<i>Onopordum acanthium</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Onopordum acanthium</i> L.		
<i>Onopordum acanthium</i> L.	Fresh flowerhead of <i>Onopordum acanthium</i> L.		
Orchis	see Tribus <i>ophrydeae</i>		
<i>Origanum majorana</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Origanum majorana</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Origanum majorana</i> L.	Dried flowering aerial parts of <i>Origanum majorana</i> L.		
<i>Origanum majorana</i> L.	Ripe fruit of <i>Origanum majorana</i> L.		
<i>Ornithogalum umbellatum</i> L.	Whole fresh plant of <i>Ornithogalum umbellatum</i> L.		
<i>Oxalis acetosella</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Oxalis acetosella</i> L.		HAB
<i>Oxalis acetosella</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of <i>Oxalis acetosella</i> L.		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Oxalis acetosella</i> L.	Dried flowering plant of <i>Oxalis acetosella</i> L.	AS	
<i>Paeonia officinalis</i> L. emend. Willd.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Paeonia officinalis</i> L. emend. Willd., collected during spring		HAB
<i>Panax ginseng</i> C.A. Meyer	Whole or cut dried root of <i>Panax ginseng</i> C.A. Meyer. (Ginseng)		Ph.Eur. / USP
<i>Papaver rhoeas</i> L.	Fresh flowers of <i>Papaver rhoeas</i> L.		HAB
<i>Papaver somniferum</i> L.	Fresh latex obtained from incisions in unripe fruit of <i>Papaver somniferum</i> L.		
<i>Papaver somniferum</i> L.	Fresh unripe fruit of <i>Papaver somniferum</i> L.		
<i>Paris quadrifolia</i> L.	Whole fresh plants of <i>Paris quadrifolia</i> L., collected when the fruits have ripened		HAB
Parmelia	see <i>Hypogymnia physodes</i> (L.) Nyl.		
<i>Passiflora caerulea</i> L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of <i>Passiflora caerulea</i> L.		
<i>Passiflora incarnata</i> L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of <i>Passiflora incarnata</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Passiflora incarnata</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Passiflora incarnata</i> L.		HAB
Peat	Fresh moist peat from moorland		
<i>Pelargonium</i> species (Geraniaceae), e.g. <i>Pelargonium graveolens</i> Ait.	Essential oil from suitable subspecies of <i>Pelargonium</i> e.g. <i>Pelargonium graveolens</i> Ait.	AS	
<i>Petasites hybridus</i> (L.) Ph. Gaertn., B. Mey. et Scherb	Fresh rhizome of <i>Petasites hybridus</i> (L.) Ph. Gaertn., B. Mey. et Scherb. with attached roots		
<i>Petasites hybridus</i> (L.) Ph. Gaertn., B. Mey. et Scherb.	Whole fresh flowering plant of <i>Petasites hybridus</i> (L.) Ph. Gaertn. B. Mey. et Scherb.		
<i>Petroselinum crispum</i> (Mill.) Nym. ex A. W. Hill	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Petroselinum crispum</i> (Mill.) Nym. ex A. W. Hill ssp. <i>crispum</i> , collected at the start of flowering		HAB
<i>Petroselinum crispum</i> (Mill.) Nym. ex A. W. Hill	Dried roots of <i>Petroselinum crispum</i> (Mill.) Nym. ex A. W. Hill ssp. <i>tuberosum</i> (Bernh. ex Rchb.)	AS	
<i>Peucedanum ostruthium</i> (L.) W. D. J. Koch	Fresh rhizome of <i>Peucedanum ostruthium</i> (L.) W.D.J. Koch		
<i>Peumus boldus</i> Mol.	Whole or fragmented dry leaf of <i>Peumus boldus</i> Molina. (Boldo leaf)	AS	HAB / Ph. Eur. / Ph. Fr.
<i>Phyllanthus niruri</i> hort. non L.	Dried underground parts of <i>Phyllanthus niruri</i> hort. non L.		
<i>Phyllitis scolopendrium</i> (L.) Newm.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Phyllitis scolopendrium</i> (L.) Newm.		
<i>Phyllostachys viridiglaucescens</i> (Carr.) A. et C. Riv.	Nodes from the stem of <i>Phyllostachys viridiglaucescens</i> (Carr.) A. et C. Riv., collected in summer		
<i>Phytolacca americana</i> L.	Fresh roots of <i>Phytolacca americana</i> L., collected during autumn		HAB
<i>Phytolacca americana</i> L.	Fresh ripe fruits of <i>Phytolacca americana</i> L.		HAB
<i>Picea abies</i> (L.) Karst.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of needles and tips of branches or branches of <i>Picea abies</i> (L.) Karsten and of <i>Abies sibirica</i> Ledebour or other subspecies of <i>Abies</i> and <i>Picea</i>	AS	DAB
<i>Picea abies</i> (L.) Karst.	Fresh young tips of shoots of <i>Picea abies</i> (L.) Karst.		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Picea nigra</i> (L.) Link	Dried resin from <i>Picea nigra</i> (L.) Link		
<i>Pimpinella anisum</i> L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the dry ripe fruits of <i>Pimpinella anisum</i> L. (Anise oil)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Pimpinella anisum</i> L.	Whole dry cremocarp of <i>Pimpinella anisum</i> L. (Aniseed)	AS	HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Pinus mugo</i> Turra	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the fresh needles and tips of branches of <i>Pinus mugo</i> Turra	AS	Ph. Helv. / DAC / Ph. Eur.
<i>Pinus sylvestris</i> L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the fresh needles and tips of branches or fresh branches with needles and tips of <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> L. or other species of the genus <i>Pinus</i>	AS	DAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Pinus</i> species	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the oleoresin of <i>Pinus</i> species, in particular <i>Pinus palustris</i> Miller and <i>Pinus pinaster</i> Aiton. (Purified turpentine)	AS	DAC / Ph.Eur.
<i>Piper nigrum</i> L.	Dried fruit of <i>Piper nigrum</i> L.		
<i>Piper nigrum</i> L.	Fruit of <i>Piper nigrum</i> L., collected and dried before ripening		
Pix betulina	Birch tar see <i>Betula pendula</i> Roth, <i>Betula pubescens</i> Ehrhart		
<i>Plantago lanceolata</i> L.	Whole or cut dried herb of <i>Plantago lanceolata</i> L.	AS	DAB 1999
<i>Plantago lanceolata</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Plantago lanceolata</i> L.		
<i>Plantago lanceolata</i> L.	Dried leaf of <i>Plantago lanceolata</i> L.		Ph. Helv. / Ph. Eur.
<i>Podophyllum peltatum</i> L.	Dried underground parts of <i>Podophyllum peltatum</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
Pollens	Flower pollen		
<i>Polygala amara</i> L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of <i>Polygala amara</i> L.		
<i>Polygonatum odoratum</i> (Mill.) Druce	Fresh rhizome of <i>Polygonatum odoratum</i> (Mill.) Druce with roots		
<i>Polypodium vulgare</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Polypodium vulgare</i> L.		
<i>Polypodium vulgare</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Polypodium vulgare</i> L.		
<i>Populus tremula</i> L.	Fresh bark and leaves of <i>Populus tremula</i> L.		
<i>Potentilla erecta</i> (L.) Raeusch.	Whole or cut, dried rhizome, freed from the roots, of <i>Potentilla erecta</i> (L.) Raeusch. ( <i>P. tormentilla</i> Stokes). (Tormentil)		Ph. Eur.
<i>Potentilla erecta</i> (L.) Raeusch.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Potentilla erecta</i> (L.) Raeusch., collected during spring		HAB
Poterium	see <i>Sacropoterium spinosum</i> (L.) Spach.		
<i>Primula veris</i> L.	Fresh flowers of <i>Primula veris</i> L.		
<i>Primula veris</i> L.	Dried flowers of <i>Primula veris</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Prunus dulcis</i> (Miller) D. A. Webb var. <i>dulcis</i> and/or <i>Prunus dulcis</i> (Miller) D. A. Webb var. <i>amara</i> (D. C.) Buchheim	Fatty oil obtained by cold expression from the ripe seeds of <i>Prunus dulcis</i> (Miller) D.A. Webb var. <i>dulcis</i> or <i>Prunus dulcis</i> (Miller) D.A. Webb var. <i>amara</i> (D.C.) Buchheim or a mixture of both varieties. (Almond oil, virgin)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Prunus dulcis</i> (Mill.) D.A.Webb var. <i>amara</i> (DC.) Buchheim	Dried, ripe seeds of <i>Prunus dulcis</i> (Mill.) D.A.Webb, var. <i>amara</i> (DC.) Buchheim		HAB
<i>Prunus laurocerasus</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Prunus laurocerasus</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Prunus spinosa</i> L.	Juice from the fresh fruit of <i>Prunus spinosa</i> L.	AS	

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Prunus spinosa</i> L.	Fresh flowers and young tips of shoots of <i>Prunus spinosa</i> L.		
<i>Prunus spinosa</i> L.	Fresh flowers of <i>Prunus spinosa</i> L., collected before the petals drop off		HAB
<i>Prunus spinosa</i> L.	Fresh fruit of <i>Prunus spinosa</i> L.		
<i>Prunus spinosa</i> L.	Fresh young tips of shoots of <i>Prunus spinosa</i> L., collected some weeks after flowering		HAB
<i>Prunus spinosa</i> L.	Fully opened dried flowers of <i>Prunus spinosa</i> L.		DAC
<i>Ptelea trifoliata</i> L.	Fresh bark from young branches of <i>Ptelea trifoliata</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Pteridium aquilinum</i> (L.) Kuhn	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Pteridium aquilinum</i> (L.) Kuhn		
<i>Pulmonaria officinalis</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Pulmonaria officinalis</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Pulsatilla vulgaris</i> Mill.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Pulsatilla vulgaris</i> Mill.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Pulsatilla vulgaris</i> Mill.	Fresh flowers of <i>Pulsatilla vulgaris</i> Mill. with apical leaf husk.		
<i>Pyrus malus</i>	See <i>Malus sylvestris</i> Mill.		
Quebracho	See <i>Aspidosperma quebracho-blanco</i> Schlechtend.		
<i>Quercus robur</i> L.	Fresh oakapples of <i>Quercus robur</i> L. including the gall wasp or larva		
<i>Quercus robur</i> L. and <i>Quercus petraea</i> (Matt.) Liebl.	Fresh bark from young branches and shoots from stumps of <i>Quercus robur</i> L. and <i>Quercus petraea</i> (Matt.) Liebl.		
<i>Quercus robur</i> L. und <i>Quercus petraea</i> (Matt.) Liebl.	Cut and dried bark from the fresh young branches of <i>Quercus robur</i> L., <i>Q. petraea</i> (Matt.) Liebl. and <i>Q. pubescens</i> Willd. (Oak bark)		HAB / Ph.Eur.
<i>Ranunculus bulbosus</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Ranunculus bulbosus</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Raphanus sativus</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Raphanus sativus</i> L. var. <i>niger</i> (Mill.) S. Kerner.		HAB
<i>Raphanus sativus</i> L.	Dried root of <i>Raphanus sativus</i> L. var. <i>niger</i> (Mill.) S. Kerner		Ph. Fr.
Ratanhia	see <i>Krameria triandra</i> Ruiz. et Pav.		
<i>Rauwolfia serpentina</i> (L.) Benth.	Dried roots of <i>Rauwolfia serpentina</i> (L.) Benth.		HAB / DAB
Resina Laricis	see <i>Larix decidua</i> Mill.		
<i>Rhamnus frangula</i> L.	Fresh bark of the stems and branches of <i>Rhamnus frangula</i> L.		HAB
<i>Rhamnus frangula</i> L.	Dried, whole or fragmented bark of the stems and branches of <i>Rhamnus frangula</i> L. (Frangula bark)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Rhamnus purshianus</i> D.C.	Dried, whole or fragmented bark of <i>Rhamnus purshianus</i> D.C. ( <i>Frangula purshiana</i> (D.C.) A. Gray ex J.C. Cooper) (Cascara)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Rheum officinale</i> Baill.	Dried underground parts of <i>Rheum officinale</i> Baill.		Ph. Fr.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Rheum officinale</i> Baill., <i>Rheum palmatum</i> L.	Whole or cut, dried underground parts of <i>Rheum palmatum</i> L. or <i>Rheum officinale</i> Baillon or of hybrids of these two species or of a mixture. The underground parts are often divided; the stem and most of the bark with the rootlets are removed. (Rhubarb)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Rheum rhaponticum</i> L.	Whole or cut, dried underground parts of <i>Rheum rhaponticum</i> L.		
<i>Rhododendron chrysanthum</i> Pall.	Dried leafy twigs of <i>Rhododendron campylocarpum</i> Hook. f. or <i>Rhododendron chrysanthum</i> Pall., their hybrids, or mixtures thereof		HAB
<i>Rhododendron ferrugineum</i> L.	Fresh leafy twigs of <i>Rhododendron ferrugineum</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Rhododendron ferrugineum</i> L.	Fresh flowering leafy twigs of <i>Rhododendron ferrugineum</i> L.		
<i>Rhus toxicodendron</i> L.	see <i>Toxicodendron quercifolium</i> (Michx.) Greene		
<i>Ribes nigrum</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Ribes nigrum</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Ricinus communis</i> L.	Fatty oil obtained by cold expression from the seeds of <i>Ricinus communis</i> L. (Castor oil, virgin)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Ricinus communis</i> L.	Dried seeds of <i>Ricinus communis</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Robinia pseudoacacia</i> L.	Fresh bark from young branches of <i>Robinia pseudoacacia</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Robinia pseudoacacia</i> L.	Fresh bark of <i>Robinia pseudoacacia</i> L.		
<i>Rosa canina</i> L.	Rose hips made up by the receptacle and the remains of the dried sepals of <i>Rosa canina</i> L., <i>R. pendulina</i> L. and other <i>Rosa</i> species, with the anchenes removed (Dog rose)	AS	Ph.Eur.
<i>Rosa centifolia</i> L.	Fresh petals of <i>Rosa centifolia</i> L.		
<i>Rosa</i> L.	Essential oil from fresh flowers of suitable species of the genus <i>Rosa</i> , particularly <i>Rosa gallica</i> L., <i>Rosa damascena</i> Mill. and <i>Rosa centifolia</i> L.	AS	
<i>Rosa</i> L.	Substance obtained by stepwise extraction with petrolether and alcohol from fresh flowers of <i>Rosa damascena</i> L. and <i>Rosa centifolia</i> L.	AS	
<i>Rosa</i> L.	Fresh flowers of suitable species of the genus <i>Rosa</i> L., particularly dark red tea hybrids		
<i>Rosa</i> L.	Dried buds and sepals of suitable species of the genus <i>Rosa</i> L., particularly <i>Rosa gallica</i> L., <i>Rosa centifolia</i> L., <i>Rosa damascena</i> Mill. as well as dark red tea hybrids		
<i>Rosmarinus officinalis</i> L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the flowering aerial parts of <i>Rosmarinus officinalis</i> L. (Rosemary oil)	AS	Ph.Eur.
<i>Rosmarinus officinalis</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Rosmarinus officinalis</i> L.		HAB
<i>Rosmarinus officinalis</i> L.	Fresh flowering twigs of <i>Rosmarinus officinalis</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Rosmarinus officinalis</i> L.	Whole dried leaf of <i>Rosmarinus officinalis</i> L. (Rosemary leaf)		HAB / Ph.Eur.
<i>Rumex crispus</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Rumex crispus</i> L.		HAB
<i>Ruta graveolens</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Ruta graveolens</i> L., collected at the start of flowering		HAB

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Ruta graveolens</i> L.	Fresh, aerial, unligified parts of <i>Ruta graveolens</i> L. before flowering		Ph. Fr.
Sabadilla	see <i>Schoenocaulon officinale</i> (Cham. et Schlechtend.) A. Gray		
Sabal serrulatum	see <i>Serenoa repens</i> (Bartr.) Small.		
Sabina	see <i>Juniperus sabina</i> L.		
<i>Saccharum officinarum</i> L.	Caramel obtained through the roasting of <i>Saccharum officinarum</i> L.		
<i>Salix alba</i> ssp. <i>vitellina</i> (L.) Arcang.	Fresh bark and leaves of <i>Salix alba</i> ssp. <i>vitellina</i> (L.) Arcang.		
<i>Salix alba</i> , ssp. <i>alba</i> L., ssp. <i>vitellina</i> (L.) Arcang., <i>Salix purpurea</i> L., <i>Salix viminalis</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Salix alba</i> , ssp. <i>alba</i> L. and/or ssp. <i>vitellina</i> (L.) Arcang. and/or <i>Salix purpurea</i> L. and/or <i>Salix viminalis</i> L.		
<i>Salix purpurea</i> L.	Fresh bark and leaves of <i>Salix purpurea</i> L.		
<i>Salix</i> species	Whole or fragmented dried bark of young branches or whole dried pieces of current year twigs of various species of genus <i>Salix</i> including <i>S. purpurea</i> L., <i>S. daphnoides</i> Vill. and <i>S. fragilis</i> L. (Willow bark)		Ph.Eur.
<i>Salix viminalis</i> L.	Fresh bark and leaves of <i>Salix viminalis</i> L.		
<i>Salvia officinalis</i> L.	Thujone-rich essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the aerial parts of <i>Salvia officinalis</i> L.	AS	DAC
<i>Salvia officinalis</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Salvia officinalis</i> L.		HAB
<i>Salvia officinalis</i> L.	Whole or cut dried leaves of <i>Salvia officinalis</i> L. (Sage leaf)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.	Fresh pith from branches of <i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.		
<i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.	Dried pith from branches of <i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.		
<i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.	Fresh inflorescence of <i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.	Fresh cyme with flowers of <i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.		
<i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.	Dried flowers of <i>Sambucus nigra</i> L. (Elder flower)		Ph. Eur.
<i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.	Dried inflorescence of <i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.		
<i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.	Equal parts of fresh leaves and inflorescences of <i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.		HAB
<i>Sanguinaria canadensis</i> L.	Dried underground parts of <i>Sanguinaria canadensis</i> L., collected in autumn		HAB
<i>Sanicula europaea</i> L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of <i>Sanicula europaea</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Saponaria officinalis</i> L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of <i>Saponaria officinalis</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Sarcopoterium spinosum</i> (L.) Spach.	Dried bark from the roots of <i>Sarcopoterium spinosum</i> (L.) Spach.		
Sarothamnus scoparius	see <i>Cytisus scoparius</i> (L.) Link.		
Sarsaparilla	see <i>Smilax regelii</i> Kill. et C. V. Morton, <i>Smilax medica</i> Schlechtend. et Cham. etc.		
<i>Schoenocaulon officinale</i> (Cham. et Schlechtend.) A. Gray	Dried ripe seeds of <i>Schoenocaulon officinale</i> (Cham. et Schlechtend.) A. Gray.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
Scilla	see <i>Urginea maritima</i> (L.) Bak. s.l.		
Scolopendrium	see <i>Phyllitis scolopendrium</i> (L.) Newm.		
<i>Scrophularia nodosa</i> L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of <i>Scrophularia nodosa</i> L.		Ph. Fr.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Scutellaria laterifolia</i> L.	Dried whole flowering plant of <i>Scutellaria laterifolia</i> L.		
<i>Secale cornutum</i>	see <i>Claviceps purpurea</i> (Fr.) Tul.		
<i>Sedum acre</i> L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of <i>Sedum acre</i> L.		HAB
<i>Sedum acre</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Sedum acre</i> L.		
<i>Sedum telephium</i> L.	Fresh herb <i>Sedum telephium</i> L. ( <i>Sedum purpureum</i> L.)		
<i>Selenicereus grandiflorus</i> (L.) Britt. et Rose	Fresh young stem and flowers of <i>Selenicereus grandiflorus</i> (L.) Britt. et Rose. (Cactus)		HAB
<i>Semecarpus anacardium</i> L. f.	Dried ripe fruits of <i>Semecarpus anacardium</i> L. f.		HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Senecio bicolor</i> (Willd.) Tod.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Senecio bicolor</i> (Willd.) Tod., collected before flowering		
<i>Senecio jacobaea</i> L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of <i>Senecio jacobaea</i> L.		
<i>Senecio vulgaris</i> L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of <i>Senecio vulgaris</i> L.		
Senega	see <i>Polygala senega</i> L.		
Senna	see <i>Cassia angustifolia</i> Vahl.		
<i>Serenoa repens</i> (Bartr.) Small	Dried ripe fruit of <i>Serenoa repens</i> (Bartr.) Small.		USP / Ph. Fr.
<i>Serenoa repens</i> (Bartr.) Small	Fresh ripe fruits of <i>Serenoa repens</i> (Bartr.) Small. ( <i>Sabal serrulatum</i> )		HAB
<i>Silybum marianum</i> (L.) Gaertn.	Dried ripe fruits of <i>Silybum marianum</i> (L.) Gaertn., with the pappus removed. ( <i>Carduus marianus</i> )		HAB / Ph. Eur. / Ph. Fr. / USP
<i>Smilax regelii</i> Kill. et C. V. Morton, <i>Smilax medica</i> Schlechtend. et Cham. etc.	Dried underground parts of <i>Smilax regelii</i> Kill. et C. V. Morton, <i>Smilax medica</i> Schlechtend. et Cham. and other <i>Smilax</i> species		HAB 34 / Ph. Fr.
<i>Solanum dulcamara</i> L.	Fresh flowers of <i>Solanum dulcamara</i> L.		
<i>Solanum dulcamara</i> L.	Fresh shoots of <i>Solanum dulcamara</i> L., collected prior to flowering		HAB
<i>Solanum dulcamara</i> L.	Fresh young leafy branches of <i>Solanum dulcamara</i> L.		
<i>Solanum dulcamara</i> L.	Dried, lignified stems of <i>Solanum dulcamara</i> L.		
<i>Solanum lycopersicum</i>	See <i>Lycopersicon lycopersicum</i> (L.) Karst. ex Farw.		
<i>Solidago virgaurea</i> L.	Fresh inflorescence of <i>Solidago virgaurea</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Solidago virgaurea</i> L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of <i>Solidago virgaurea</i> L.		
<i>Spartium scoparium</i>	See <i>Cytisus scoparius</i> (L.) Link.		
<i>Spigelia anthelmia</i> L.	Dried, whole flowering plant of <i>Spigelia anthelmia</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Spigelia anthelmia</i> L.	Dried aerial parts of <i>Spigelia anthelmia</i> L.		HAB
<i>Spinacia oleracea</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Spinacia oleracea</i> L.		
Spiraea	see <i>Filipendula ulmaria</i> (L.) Maxim.		
Spirito ex vino	See <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.		
<i>Stachys officinalis</i> (L.) Trev.	Fresh whole flowering plant of <i>Stachys officinalis</i> (L.) Trev.		
<i>Stachys officinalis</i> (L.) Trev.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Stachys officinalis</i> (L.) Trev., collected at flowering time		HAB
Staphisagria	see <i>Delphinium staphisagria</i> L.		
<i>Stellaria media</i> (L.)	Fresh whole plant of <i>Stellaria media</i> (L.)		
Sticta	see <i>Lobaria pulmonaria</i> (L.) Hoffm.		
Stramonium	see <i>Datura stramonium</i> L.		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Strophanthus kombe</i> Oliv.	Fatty oil from the seeds of <i>Strophanthus kombe</i> Oliv.		
<i>Strophanthus kombe</i> Oliv.	Seeds of <i>Strophanthus kombe</i> Oliv.		
<i>Strychnos ignatii</i> Bergius	Dried ripe seeds of <i>Strychnos ignatii</i> Bergius.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Strychnos nux-vomica</i> L.	Dried ripe seeds of <i>Strychnos nux-vomica</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Styrax tonkinensis</i> (Pierre) Craib ex Hartwich	Balsam obtained through incisions made into the trunk of <i>Styrax tonkinensis</i> (Pierre) Craib ex Hartwich (Styracaceae)	AS	DAC
<i>Symphytum officinale</i> L.	Fresh root of <i>Symphytum officinale</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Symphytum officinale</i> L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of <i>Symphytum officinale</i> L.		
<i>Syzygium aromaticum</i> (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the dried flower buds of <i>Syzygium aromaticum</i> (L.) Merrill et L. M. Perry ( <i>Eugenia caryophyllus</i> [Spreng.] Bull. et Harr.). (Clove oil)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Syzygium aromaticum</i> (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry	Whole flower buds of <i>Syzygium aromaticum</i> (L.) Merrill et L.M. Perry ( <i>Eugenia caryophyllus</i> [Spreng.] Bull. et Harr.) dried until they become reddish-brown. (Clove)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Syzygium jambos</i> (L.) Alston	Dried seeds of <i>Syzygium jambos</i> (L.) Alston		
Tabacum	See <i>Nicotiana tabacum</i> L.		
<i>Taraxacum officinale</i> agg. F.H. Wigg.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Taraxacum officinale</i> agg. F.H. Wigg.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Taraxacum officinale</i> agg. F.H. Wigg.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Taraxacum officinale</i> agg. F.H. Wigg. in autumn ( <i>autumnale</i> ) or spring ( <i>vernale</i> )		
Tartarus crudus	See <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.		
<i>Teucrium marum</i> L.	Fresh flowering, aerial parts of <i>Teucrium marum</i> L.		
<i>Teucrium marum</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Teucrium marum</i> L., without lignified sections of twig		HAB
<i>Teucrium scordium</i> L.	Fresh flowering, aerial parts of <i>Teucrium scordium</i> L.		
<i>Teucrium scorodonia</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of flowering plants of <i>Teucrium scorodonia</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
<i>Teucrium scorodonia</i> L.	Dried aerial parts of flowering plants of <i>Teucrium scorodonia</i> L.		
<i>Thuja occidentalis</i> L.	Fresh leafy branches of <i>Thuja occidentalis</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Thuja occidentalis</i> L.	Fresh, leafy, one-year-old twigs of <i>Thuja occidentalis</i> L.		HAB
<i>Thymus serpyllum</i> L. emend. Mill.	Dried, whole or cut, flowering aerial shoots of <i>Thymus serpyllum</i> L. sensu latiore		DAB
<i>Thymus vulgaris</i> L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh flowering aerial parts of <i>Thymus vulgaris</i> L., <i>T. zygis</i> Loefl. ex L. or a mixture of both species. (Thyme oil)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Thymus vulgaris</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Thymus vulgaris</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Thymus vulgaris</i> L.	Whole leaves and flowers separated from the previously dried stems of <i>Thymus vulgaris</i> L. or <i>Thymus zygis</i> Loefl. ex L. or a mixture of both species. (Thyme)		Ph. Eur.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Tilia cordata</i> Miller, <i>Tilia platyphyllos</i> Scopoli	Fresh inflorescence of <i>Tilia cordata</i> Miller and <i>Tilia platyphyllos</i> Scopoli		
<i>Tilia cordata</i> Miller, <i>Tilia platyphyllos</i> Scopoli	Whole, dried inflorescence of <i>Tilia cordata</i> Miller, of <i>Tilia platyphyllos</i> Scop., of <i>Tilia x vulgaris</i> Heyne or a mixture of these		Ph. Eur.
Tormentilla	see <i>Potentilla erecta</i> (L.) Raeusch.		
Toxicodendron	see <i>Toxicodendron quercifolium</i> (Michx.) Greene		
<i>Toxicodendron quercifolium</i> (Michx.) Greene	Fresh leaves of <i>Toxicodendron quercifolium</i> (Michx.) Greene		(Ph. Fr.)
<i>Toxicodendron quercifolium</i> (Michx.) Greene	Fresh, young, not yet lignified shoots of <i>Toxicodendron quercifolium</i> (Michx.) Greene, with leaves ( <i>Toxicodendron quercifolium</i> )		HAB
Tribus <i>ophrydeae</i>	Filial tubers of different species of <i>Orchids</i> of Tribus <i>ophrydeae</i> , collected at flowering time, which have been blanched in boiling water and dried		
<i>Triticum aestivum</i> L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Fatty oil obtained from the germ of the grain of <i>Triticum aestivum</i> L. emend. Fiori et Paol., by cold expression or by other suitable mechanical means. (Wheat-germ oil)	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Triticum aestivum</i> L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Fresh flowers of <i>Triticum aestivum</i> L. emend. Fiori et Paol.		
<i>Triticum aestivum</i> L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Fresh germinated fruit of <i>Triticum aestivum</i> L. emend. Fiori et Paol.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Triticum aestivum</i> L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Fresh parts projecting out of the inflorescence spikelet of <i>Triticum aestivum</i> L. emend. Fiori et Paol.		
<i>Triticum aestivum</i> L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Dried seed of <i>Triticum aestivum</i> L. emend Fiori et Paol.	AS	
<i>Triticum aestivum</i> L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Wheat gluten		
<i>Triticum repens</i>	see <i>Agropyron repens</i> (L.) P. Beauv.		
<i>Tropaeolum majus</i> L.	Fresh, flowering aerial parts of <i>Tropaeolum majus</i> L.		
<i>Tulipa silvestris</i> L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of <i>Tulipa silvestris</i> L.		
<i>Urginea maritima</i> (L.) Bak.	Fresh, fleshy scale leaves of the red-scaled subspecies of <i>Urginea maritima</i> (L.) Bak. <i>sensu latiore</i> (e.g. <i>Urginea numidica</i> [Jord. et Fourr.] Grey) with a clearly detectable scilliroside fraction. (Scilla)		HAB
<i>Urginea maritima</i> var. <i>rubra</i> (L.) Baker	Fresh bulb of <i>Urginea maritima</i> var. <i>rubra</i> (L.) Baker		
<i>Urtica dioica</i> L.	Fresh leaves of <i>Urtica dioica</i> L.		
<i>Urtica dioica</i> L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Urtica dioica</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Eur.
<i>Urtica dioica</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Urtica dioica</i> L.		
<i>Urtica dioica</i> L.	Dried, whole or cut leaves of <i>Urtica dioica</i> L., <i>Urtica urens</i> L., their hybrids or a mixture of these	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Urtica dioica</i> L.	Dried leaves of <i>Urtica dioica</i> L.		
<i>Urtica dioica</i> L.	Dried, aerial parts with maximum 3 mm thick stems of <i>Urtica dioica</i> L., collected shortly before flowering	AS	
<i>Urtica urens</i> L.	Fresh, whole flowering plant of <i>Urtica urens</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Urtica urens</i> L.	Fresh, whole plant of <i>Urtica urens</i> L.		
<i>Urtica urens</i> L.	Fresh, flowering aerial parts of <i>Urtica urens</i> L.		
<i>Urtica urens</i> L.	Dried, aerial parts of <i>Urtica urens</i> L.		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Usnea</i> P. Br. ex Adans. species	Dried thallus from <i>Usnea</i> P. Br. ex Adans. species, especially <i>Usnea barbata</i> (L.) Wigg., <i>Usnea subfloridana</i> Stirton and <i>Usnea filipendula</i> Stirton		
<i>Vaccinium myrtillus</i> L.	Dried ripe fruit of <i>Vaccinium myrtillus</i> L.		Ph.Eur.
<i>Vaccinium vitis-idaea</i> L.	Leafy twigs with fresh fruits of <i>Vaccinium vitis-idaea</i> L.		
<i>Valeriana officinalis</i> L.	Fresh flowers of <i>Valeriana officinalis</i> L.		
<i>Valeriana officinalis</i> L.	Fresh, underground parts of <i>Valeriana officinalis</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Valeriana officinalis</i> L.	Fresh underground parts of <i>Valeriana officinalis</i> L. <i>sensu latiore</i>		
<i>Valeriana officinalis</i> L.	Dried, whole or fragmented underground parts of <i>Valeriana officinalis</i> L. <i>s.l.</i> , including the rhizome surrounded by the roots and stolons. (Valerian root)	AS	Ph. Eur. / USP
<i>Vaucheria</i> DC species	Fresh, whole organism of <i>Vaucheria sessilis</i> DC and <i>Vaucheria aversa</i> (kuetz.) Hasall.		
<i>Veratrum album</i> L.	Carefully dried rhizome with attached roots of <i>Veratrum album</i> L.		
<i>Veratrum album</i> L.	Fresh, underground parts of <i>Veratrum album</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Verbascum densiflorum</i> Bertol.	Fresh, unripe fruits of <i>Verbascum densiflorum</i> Bertol. and <i>Verbascum phlomoides</i> L.		
<i>Verbascum thapsiforme</i> Schrad.	Fresh, flowering aerial parts of <i>Verbascum thapsiforme</i> Schrad.		
<i>Verbascum thapsiforme</i> Schrad.	Dried fruit of <i>Verbascum thapsiforme</i> Schrad.		
<i>Veronica officinalis</i> L.	Dried aerial parts of <i>Veronica officinalis</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Vinca minor</i> L.	Fresh, whole flowering plant of <i>Vinca minor</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
Vinum	see <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.		
<i>Viola tricolor</i> L.	Fresh, whole flowering plant of <i>Viola tricolor</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Viola tricolor</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Viola tricolor</i> L., collected at flowering time		HAB
<i>Viola tricolor</i> L.	Dried, whole or fragmented, flowering aerial parts of <i>Viola tricolor</i> L.	AS	Ph. Eur.
<i>Virola sebifera</i> Aubl.	Fresh sap from the bark of <i>Virola sebifera</i> Aubl. preserved with ethanol (96 per cent)		HAB
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> L. ssp. <i>abietis</i> (Wiesb.) Abromeit (Host tree: <i>Abies</i> species)		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>abietis</i> Beck (Host tree: <i>Abies alba</i> Mill. ( <i>Abies pectinata</i> (Lam.) DC); fir)		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of <i>Viscum alba</i> L. ssp. <i>album</i> (Host trees: <i>Malus</i> species, <i>Populus</i> species, <i>Tilia</i> species)		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> L. ssp. <i>austriacum</i> (Wiesb.) Vollmann (Host tree: <i>Pinus</i> species)		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>album</i> L. (Host tree: <i>Malus domestica</i> Boekh.; Apple tree)		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	AS	Reference to Standards
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>austriacum</i> (Wiesb.) Vollmann (Host tree: <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> L.; Pine)		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>album</i> L. (Host tree: <i>Quercus robur</i> L., <i>Quercus petraea</i> (Matt.) Liebl.; Oak)		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>album</i> L. (Host tree: <i>Ulmus caprinifolia</i> Gled. [ <i>Ulmus campestris</i> L.], <i>Ulmus glabra</i> Huds.; Elm)		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Fresh leafy shoots and fruits of <i>Viscum album</i> L.		HAB
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Fresh haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> L. ssp. <i>album</i> (Host tree: <i>Malus</i> species)		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Fresh shoots collected in summer and flowers collected in winter of <i>Viscum album</i> L. ssp. <i>album</i> (Host tree: <i>Salix alba</i> )		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Fresh aerial parts including fruit of <i>Viscum album</i> L. (Host trees: Apple, Birch, Fir, Pine, Lime)		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Dried plant including fruit of <i>Viscum album</i> L. ssp. <i>album</i> (Host trees: Oak species) without haustorium.		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Dried plant including fruit and haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> L. ssp. <i>album</i> (Host trees: <i>Crataegus</i> species)		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Dried plant including fruit and haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> L. ssp. <i>album</i> (Host trees: <i>Salix</i> species)		
<i>Viscum album</i> L.	Dried branches with leaves, flowers and fruit of <i>Viscum album</i> L. ssp. <i>album</i> (Host trees: <i>Malus</i> species)		
<i>Vitex agnus-castus</i> L.	Dried ripe fruits of <i>Vitex agnus-castus</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Eur. / USP / Ph. Fr.
<i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.	Distilled red wine vinegar		
<i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.	Red wine vinegar		
<i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.	Dried leaves of <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.		
<i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.	Distillate of wine		
<i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.	Cream of tartar		
<i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.	White wine		
<i>Zea mays</i> L.	Fresh stigma and style of <i>Zea mays</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
<i>Zingiber officinale</i> Rosc.	Dried, whole or cut rhizome of <i>Zingiber officinale</i> Roscoe, with the cork removed, either completely or from the wide flat surfaces only. (Ginger)		HAB / Ph.Eur. / USP

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Appendix 2.3.:

### Starting materials of zoological origin

Note: Starting Materials marked with "AS" are also directly used as active substances.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Animal substance	Scientific name of the animal	Specification	AS	Reference to standard
Acidum Formicae (Acidum formicicum e formica)	Several species of the <i>Formica rufa</i> group (e.g. <i>Formica lugubris</i> Zett., <i>F. polyctena</i> Först., <i>F. paralugubris</i> Seifert or <i>F. rufa</i> L.	Aqueous solution of the secretion of wood ants of the <i>Formica</i> group-group, containing not less than 1,2% m/m of formic acid.		
Ambra grisea	<i>Physeter catodon</i> L.	Substance from the intestine of <i>Physeter macrocephalus</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
Amnion	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Amnion from bovine foetus		
Anus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Anus from the calf		
Aorta	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Aorta (tota), parts from the different tracts of the calf aorta		
Aorta	<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i> L.	Aorta from the rabbit		
Apis mellifica	<i>Apis mellifica</i> L.	Living honey bees		HAB / Ph. Fr. / Ph. Eur.
Apis regina	<i>Apis mellifica</i> L.	Whole cells with larvae and nourishing sap		
Apisinum	<i>Apis mellifica</i> L.	Carefully dried poison from <i>Apis mellifica</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
Appendix vermiformis	<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i> L.	Vermiform process of the blindgut from the rabbit		
Aranea avicularis	<i>Avicularia avicularia</i> L.	Whole living <i>Avicularia avicularia</i> L.		
Aranea diadema	<i>Araneus diadematus</i> Clerk	Living spiders of <i>Araneus diadematus</i> Clerk.		
Arteria basilaris	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Arteria basilaris from the calf		
Arteria brachialis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Arteria brachialis from the calf		
Arteria carotis communis et sinus caroticus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts from the Arteria carotis communis dextra and sinistra and parts from the Sinus caroticus from the calf		
Arteria cerebri media	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts from the Arteria carotis cerebialis and its ramifications from the calf		
Arteria coeliaca	see Truncus coeliacus			
Arteria coronaria	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Arteria coronaria from the calf		
Arteria femoralis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Arteria femoralis from the calf		
Arteria ophthalmica	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the Arteria ophthalmica externa from the calf		
Arteria poplitea	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Arteria poplitea from the calf		
Arteria pulmonalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Arteria pulmonalis from the calf		
Arteria renalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Arteria renalis from the calf		
Arteriae	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the Arteria basilaris, brachialis, coronaria, femoralis, mesenterica, pulmonalis and renalis from the calf		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Animal substance	Scientific name of the animal	Specification	AS	Reference to standard
Articulatio coxae	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Equal parts of the hip joint from the calf: -bone material of the acetabulum and caput femoris -joint cartilage -Ligamentum teres femoris		
Articulatio cubiti	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the bones that form the joint, cartilage, parts of the joint capsule, synovia and parts of ligaments from the calf		
Articulatio genus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the bones forming the knee joint, parts of the meniscus, of the joint capsule and ligaments as well as cartilage from the calf		
Articulatio humeri	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the bones that form the joint, cartilage, parts of the joint capsule and of the Bursa intertuberkularis from the calf		
Articulatio radiocarpea	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the bones, of the cartilage, of the ligaments and of the joint capsule the form the proximal carpal joint from the calf		
Articulatio sacroiliaca	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the ilium and of the sacrum from the joint area, as well as parts of the joint capsule and ligaments from the calf		
Articulatio subtalaris	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the cartilage, of the joint capsule, as well as synovia of the part distal to the Os centroquartale of the joint like union between Talus and Calcaneus from the calf		
Articulatio talocruralis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the bones forming the joint, Tibia and Talus, of the joint capsule, ligaments as well as synovia of the ankle joint from the calf		
Articulatio temporomandibularis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of: the Os mandibulare and of the Os temporale in the joint area, of the joint capsule, of the ligaments, of cartilage, as well as synovia from the calf		
Articulationes intercarpeae	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the bones forming the joint, of the cartilage like surface of the articulation, as well as synovia from the calf		
Articulationes intervertebrales cervicales	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the bone processus that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf		
Articulationes intervertebrales lumbales	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the bone processus that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf		
Asterias rubens	<i>Asterias rubens</i> L.	The whole starfish		
Atlas	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	A part of the Corpus (ventral side), of the Arcus and of the Ala (corresponding the the Processus transversus) of the Atlas from the calf		
Axis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	One part of each: Corpus, Arcus, Processus spinosus, Processus transversus and Dens axis of the Axis from the calf.		
Blatta orientalis	<i>Blatta orientalis</i> L.	The whole fresh or dried animal		
Bothrops jaracara	see Lachesis lanceolatus			
Bronchi	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Bronchi from the calf		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Animal substance	Scientific name of the animal	Specification	AS	Reference to standard
Bufo rana	<i>Bufo bufo</i> L.	Skin of the back from the toad		
Bulbus olfactorius	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Bulbus olfactorius of both hemispheres of the cerebrum from the calf		
Bursae articulationis humeri-Komplex	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Bursae articulationis humeri-Komplex, Bursa musculi infra spinam and Bursa intertubercularis humeri from the calf		
Calcareo carbonica ostrearum	see Conchae			
Calcium carbonicum Hahnemanni	see Conchae			
Cantharis	<i>Lytta vesicatoria</i> L.	As far as possible intact specimens, killed and dried at a temperature not exceeding 40°C		HAB
Cardia	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Cardia, parts of the wall of the stomach in the region of the entrance into the stomach from the pig		
Cartilago articularis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Cartilage of the hip, knee and shoulder joints from the calf		
Cartilago articularis coxae	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Cartilage of the hip joint from the calf		
Cartilago articularis genus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Cartilage of the knee joint from the calf		
Cavum tympani	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the wall of the cavum tympani, as well as auditory bones from the calf		
Cera flava	<i>Apis mellifica</i> L.	Bees wax obtained by melting the empty combs, washing and elimination of foreign matter	AS	Ph. Eur.
Cerebellum	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Cerebellum from the calf		
Cerebrum	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Cerebrum from the calf		
Cerebrum, regio motorica	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervous grey of the Gyrus praecentralis belonging to the Lobus frontalis of both hemispheres from the calf		
Cervix uteri	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the neck of the womb from the cow		
Circulus arteriosus cerebri	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Circulus arteriosus cerebri from the calf		
Coccus cacti	<i>Dactylopius coccus</i> Costa	The fertilized, dried female species of <i>Dactylopius coccus</i> Costa		HAB / Ph. Fr.
Cochlea	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the Cochlea from the skeleton as well as dermal parts of the inner ear from the calf		
Cod liver oil (type B)		See Jecoris oleum		
Colon	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Colon from the pig		
Colon sigmoideum	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Colon sigmoideum, parts of the final tract of the Colon descendens from the pig		
Columna anterior	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the Columna anterior of the spinal chord from the calf		
Columna posterior	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the Columna posterior of different parts of the spinal chord from the calf		
Conchae	<i>Ostrea edulis</i> L.	The inner parts of the shells of <i>Ostrea edulis</i> L.	AS	HAB / Ph. Fr.
Conjunctiva	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Conjunctiva from the calf		
Connective tissue	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Subcutaneous and intermuscular connective tissue, fascia, ligaments, tendons, as well as mesenterium from the calf		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Animal substance	Scientific name of the animal	Specification	AS	Reference to standard
Cor	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Cor from the calf		
Cor	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the epicardium, myocardium, endocardium of the heart from the calf		
Corallium rubrum	<i>Corallium rubrum</i> L.	Fragmented parts of the chalk skeleton from <i>Corallium rubrum</i> , containing at least 82 per cent CaCO <sub>3</sub> (M <sub>r</sub> 100,1)		HAB
Cornea	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Cornea from the calf		
Cornu Caprae ibecis	<i>Capra ibex</i>	Horn from the ibex		
Cornu Cervi	<i>Cervus elaphus</i>	Antlers from the deer		
Corpora quadrigemina	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the Lamina tecti with the Corpora quadrigemina from the calf		
Corpus amygdaloideum	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Brain matter of the region of the Corpus amygdaloideum from the calf		
Corpus luteum	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Corpus luteum from the calf		
Corpus striatum	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Corpus striatum from the calf		
Corpus vitreum	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Corpus vitreum from the calf		
Corpus vitreum	<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i> L.	Corpus vitreum from the rabbit		
Crotalus horridus	<i>Crotalus horridus</i> L.	Freeze dried poison from <i>Crotalus horridus</i> L.		HAB
Crotalus terrificus	<i>Crotalus durissus</i> ssp. <i>terrificus</i> Laurenti	Freeze dried poison from <i>Crotalus durissus</i> ssp. <i>terrificus</i> Laurenti		
Cutis (feti femini)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	The external skin of a ca. 5 months old female bovine foetus		
Cutis (feti)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	The external skin of a ca. 5 months old bovine foetus		
Dactylopius coccus	see <i>Coccus cacti</i>			
Dens	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Teeth from the calf		
Diaphragma	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Muscular and tendinous parts of the diaphragma from the calf		
Diaphragma pelvis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the muscle and fascies closing the pelvis, including connective tissue from the calf		
Diencephalon	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Diencephalon from the calf		
Disci intervertebrales (cervicales)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Fibrocartilage and jelly of intervertebral disks of cervical spine from the calf		
Disci intervertebrales (cervicales, thoracici et lumbales)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of intervertebral disks of cervical, thoracic and lumbar spine from the calf		
Disci intervertebrales (feti)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Intervertebral disks of different regions of the spine from a ca. 5 months old bovine foetus		
Disci intervertebrales (lumbales)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Intervertebral disks of lumbar spine from the calf		
Ductus choledochus	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Ductus choledochus from the pig		
Ductus deferens	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Ductus deferens from the calf		
Ductus thoracicus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Ductus thoracicus from the calf		
Duodenum	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Duodenum from the pig		
Dura mater encephali	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Dura mater encephali from the calf		
Endocardium	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Endocardium from the calf		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Animal substance	Scientific name of the animal	Specification	AS	Reference to standard
Endometrium	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Endometrium from the cow		
Epididymis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Epididymis from the bull		
Epiphysis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Epiphysis from the calf		
Erythrocytes	<i>Equus przewalskii</i> f. <i>caballus</i>	Erythrocytes from the blood of the horse		
Fasciculus atrioventricularis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the conduction system of the heart, His's bundle, Purkinje's fiber from the calf		
Fasciculus opticus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Fasciculus opticus from the calf		
Favus	<i>Apis mellifica</i> L.	Honey combs with pollen	AS	
Fel tauri	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Fresh Bile from gall bladder from the calf		
Femur	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the diaphysis of Os femoris from the calf		
Folliculi lymphatici aggregati	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Parts of Peyers's patch of the small intestine from the pig		
Formica	<i>Formica rufa</i> L., <i>Formica polyctena</i> F.	Living worker ants., <i>Formica rufa</i> L., <i>Formica polyctena</i> F.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
Formica parva	<i>Lasius niger</i> ssp.	Living worker ants., <i>Lasius niger</i> ssp.		
Funiculus umbilicalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Funiculus umbilicalis from a bovine foetus between the third and ninth month of pregnancy		
Galea aponeurotica	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the superficial fascia of the forehead from the calf		
Gingiva	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Gingiva from the calf		
Glandula lacrimalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Glandula lacrimalis from the calf		
Glandula parotis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Glandular tissue of the body of the parotid gland from the calf		
Glandula suprarenalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Glandula suprarenalis from the calf		
Glandula suprarenalis (Cortex)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Glandula suprarenalis (Cortex) from the calf		
Glandula suprarenalis (Medulla)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the Medulla Glandulae suprarenalis of both adrenal glands		
Glandula suprarenalis dextra	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Glandula suprarenalis dextra from the calf		
Glandula suprarenalis sinistra	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Glandula suprarenalis sinistra from the calf		
Glandula Thymus	see Thymus (Glandula)			
Glandula thyreoidea	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Glandula thyreoidea from the calf		
Glandulae parathyreoideae	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Glandulae parathyreoideae from the calf		
Glandulae suprarenales	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Glandulae suprarenales from the calf		
Glucogenum	<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i> L.	Glycogen from the rabbit liver		
Gyrus cinguli	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Gyrus cinguli from the calf		
Hepar	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Pars intermedia of the liver from the calf		
Hepar	<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i> L.	Liver from rabbit		
Hippocampus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Hippocampus from the calf		
Hirudo ex animale	<i>Hirudo medicinalis</i> L.	Leech immediately after sacrifice		
Hypophysis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Hypophysis from the calf		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Animal substance	Scientific name of the animal	Specification	AS	Reference to standard
Hypothalamus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Hypothalamus from the calf		
Ileum	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Ileum from the pig		
Iris	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Iris from the calf		
Jecoris oleum	<i>Gadidae</i>	Cod liver oil (type B) Purified fatty oil obtained from the fresh livers of <i>Gadus morhua</i> L. and other species of <i>Gadidae</i> , solid substances being removed by cooling and filtering	AS	Ph. Eur. (Type B)
Jejunum	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Jejunum from the pig		
Keratinum Equi	<i>Equus przewalskii</i> f. <i>caballus</i>	Hoof from the horse		
Lachesis	<i>Lachesis mutus</i> L.	Carefully dried poison from <i>Lachesis mutus</i> L.		HAB
Lachesis lanceolatus	<i>Bothrops jararaca</i> WIED.	Poison from <i>Bothrops jararaca</i> Wied.		
Lac vaccae	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Fresh cow's milk		
Lapis cancri	<i>Astacus astacus</i> L.	The gastrolithes from the body cavity from <i>Astacus astacus</i> L. or other crayfish		
Larynx	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the larynx from the calf: cartilage, ligaments, muscles and mucous membrane		
Lens cristallina	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Lens cristallina from the calf		
Lien	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Lien from the calf		
Ligamentum longitudinale anterius	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Ligamentum longitudinale anterius of thoracic and lumbar regions of the spine from the calf		
Ligamentum longitudinale posterius	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts form Ligamentum longitudinale dorsale from the calf		
Ligamentum vocale	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Ligamentum vocale from the calf		
Lingua	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the tongue from the calf: muscles, mucous membrane, papillae		
Liquor cerebrospinalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Liquor cerebrospinalis from the calf		
Lobus frontalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of Lobus frontalis of cerebrum from the calf		
Lobus occipitalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of Lobus occipitalis of cerebrum from the calf		
Lobus parietalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of Lobus parietalis of the cerebrum from the calf		
Lobus temporalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of Lobus temporalis from the calf		
Mamma	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Glandular tissue from bovine udder		
Mamma (dextra)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Glandular tissue from right part of bovine udder		
Mamma (sinistra)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Glandular tissue from left part of bovine udder		
Mandibula (feti)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of lower jaw bone from a bovine foetus between 4 and 9 months		
Marmot fat	<i>Marmota</i> species	Fat from brown adipous tissue from different species of marmota, e.g. <i>Marmota marmota marmota</i> L., <i>Marmota bobak sibirica</i> Radde, <i>Marmota camtschatica</i> Pallas	AS	
Maxilla (feti)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of upper jaw bone from a bovine foetus between 4 and 9 months		
Medulla oblongata	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Medulla oblongata from the calf		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Animal substance	Scientific name of the animal	Specification	AS	Reference to standard
Medulla ossium (rubra)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Red bone marrow from the epiphysis of tubular bones from the calf		
Mel	<i>Apis mellifica</i> L.	Honey	AS	DAB
Membrana sinus frontalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Membrana sinus frontalis from the calf		
Membrana sinus maxillaris	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Membrana sinus maxillaris from the calf		
Membrana sinus sphenoidalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Membrana sinus sphenoidalis from the calf		
Membrana sinuum paranasalium	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Membrana sinuum paranasalium from the calf		
Membrana synovialis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Inner layer of the joint capsule of different joints from the calf		
Meniscus genus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Meniscus from the calf		
Mephitis putorius	<i>Mephitis mephitis</i> Schreb.	Liquid secretion of anal glands from <i>Mephitis mephitis</i> Schreb.		
Mesencephalon	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Mesencephalon from the calf		
Mesenchyma	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Embryonal connective tissue and tissue parts of the adult animal. Foetal tissues developed from mesenchyma with a high mesenchimal function: uterus of the adult animal; foetal slack connective tissue (e.g. from axilla), thyme, heart tissue (without valves), red bone marrow with reticular connective tissue and spongy bones, nucleus pulposus intervertebralis, mesenterium		
Moschus	<i>Moschus moschiferus</i> L.	Secretion of bursa from male <i>Moschus moschiferus</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
Musculi glutei	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Musculi glutei, Musculus gluteoabiceps from the calf		
Musculus deltoideus-Komplex	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Musculus deltoideus-Komplex, Musculus supra spinam, Musculus infra spinam, Musculus deltoideus, Musculus biceps brachii and Musculus triceps brachii from the calf		
Musculus rectus abdominis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Musculus rectus abdominis from the calf		
Musculus soleus-Komplex	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Musculus soleus-Komplex, Musculus soleus, Musculus fibularis (peroneus) longus, Musculus gastrocnemius from the calf		
Naja tripudians	<i>Naja naja</i> L.	Carefully dried poison from <i>Naja naja</i> L.		HAB
Nervi intercostales	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervi intercostales from the calf		
Nervus abducens	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus abducens from the calf		
Nervus accessorius	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus accessorius from the calf		
Nervus facialis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus facialis from the calf		
Nervus femoralis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus femoralis from the calf		
Nervus glossopharyngeus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus glossopharyngeus from the calf		
Nervus hypoglossus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus hypoglossus from the calf		
Nervus ischiadicus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus ischiadicus from the calf		
Nervus laryngeus recurrens	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus laryngeus recurrens from the calf		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Animal substance	Scientific name of the animal	Specification	AS	Reference to standard
Nervus medianus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus medianus from the calf		
Nervus oculomotorius	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus oculomotorius from the calf		
Nervus ophtalmicus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus ophtalmicus from the calf		
Nervus opticus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus opticus from the calf		
Nervus peronaeus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus peronaeus (fibularis) from the calf		
Nervus phrenicus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus phrenicus from the calf		
Nervus pudendus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus pudendus from the calf		
Nervus radialis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus radialis from the calf		
Nervus statoacusticus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus statoacusticus from the calf		
Nervus tibialis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus tibialis from the calf		
Nervus trigeminus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus trigeminus from the calf		
Nervus trochlearis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus trochlearis from the calf		
Nervus ulnaris	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus ulnaris from the calf		
Nervus vagus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Nervus vagus from the calf		
Nodi lymphatici	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of lymph node tissue from different parts of the body from the calf		
Oesophagus	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Oesophagus from the pig		
Ossa	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Bones from the pig		
Ossa	Aves variae, e.g. <i>Phasianus colchicus</i> L.	Cleaned and milled bones from birds, e.g. <i>Phasianus colchicus</i> L.		
Ossa longa	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Ossa longa from the calf		
Ossicula auditus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Auditory bones from the calf		
Ovarium	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Ovarium from the cow		
Pancreas	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Pancreas from the calf		
Pancreas	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Pancreas from the pig		
Papillae duodeni	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Region of the Papilla duodeni of the small intestine from the pig		
Parametrium	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of tissue from the Ligamentum parametrium of the uterus from the cow		
Parametrium dextrum	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of tissue from the right Ligamentum parametrium of the uterus from the cow		
Pars fetalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Allantochorion from the bovine foetus		
Patella	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Patella from the calf		
Pelvis renalis (et Ureter)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Pelvis renalis and Ureter from the calf		
Penis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Penis from the bull		
Pericardium	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Pericardium from the calf		
Periodontium	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of the alveolar and dentals regions from the calf		
Periosteum	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Periosteum from the calf		
Peritoneum	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Peritoneum from the calf		
Pharynx	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts from the Pharynx digestorium and Trachynx, Pharynx respiratorius from the calf		
Physeter catodon	see <i>Ambra grisea</i>			

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Animal substance	Scientific name of the animal	Specification	AS	Reference to standard
Physeter macrocephalus	see Ambra grisea			
Pia mater encephali	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Pia mater encephali from the calf		
Placenta	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Placentomas from the pregnant cow		
Pleura	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Pleura parietalis from the calf		
Plexus brachialis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Plexus brachialis from the calf		
Plexus cardiacus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Plexus cardiacus from the calf		
Plexus coelacus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Plexus coeliacus from the calf		
Plexus gastricus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Plexus gastricus from the calf		
Plexus haemorrhoidalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Venous network in the region of the rectum from the calf		
Plexus lumbalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Plexus lumbalis from the calf		
Plexus pelvinus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Plexus pelvinus and Truncus sympathicus from the region of the pelvis from the calf		
Plexus pulmonalis (Nervus vagus)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Plexus pulmonalis from the calf		
Plexus sacralis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Plexus sacralis from the calf		
Pons	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Pons from the calf		
Portio vaginalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Portio vaginalis from the cow		
Propolis	<i>Apis mellifica</i> L.	Propolis		Ph. Fr.
Prostata	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Prostata from the bull		
Pudendum feminium	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Labia vulvae, Klitoris and Glandula vestibularis major from the cow		
Pulmo	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Pulmo from the calf		
Pulpa dentis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Pulpa dentis from the calf		
Pylorus	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Pylorus from the pig		
Rectum	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Rectum from the pig		
Renes	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Renes from the calf		
Renes, regio pyelorenalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts of tissue from the Pelvis renalis and Medulla renalis from the calf		
Reticuloendothelial System	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Parts from the thymus gland, lymph nodes, bone marrow, liver and spleen from the calf		
Retina (et Chorioidea)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Retina et Chorioidea from the calf		
Sclera	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Sclera from the calf		
Sepia	<i>Sepia officinalis</i> L.	Fresh secretion from ink gland from <i>Sepia officinalis</i> L.		
Sepia gruneris	<i>Sepia officinalis</i> L.	Dried secretion from ink gland from <i>Sepia officinalis</i> L.		HAB
Sepia officinalis	<i>Sepia officinalis</i> L.	Dried ink bag		Ph. Fr.
Sinus cavernosus-Komplex	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Sinus cavernosus-Komplex, Sinus cavernosus, Nervus opticus, Nervus oculomotorius, Nervus trochlearis, Nervus trigeminus and Nervus abducens from the calf		
Spongia tosta	<i>Euspongia officinalis</i> L.	Toasted <i>Euspongia officinalis</i> L.		HAB / Ph. Fr.
Sympathicus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Truncus sympathicus from the calf		
Tendo	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Tendo from the calf		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Animal substance	Scientific name of the animal	Specification	AS	Reference to standard
Testa ovi	<i>Gallus domesticus</i>	Shell of hen's eggs		
Testes	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Testes from the bull		
Thalamus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Thalamus from the calf		
Thrombocytes	<i>Equus przewalskii</i> f. <i>caballus</i>	Thrombocytes from the blood of the horse		
Thymus (Glandula)	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Thymus (Glandula) from the calf		
Tonsilla pharyngea	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Tonsilla pharyngea from the calf		
Tonsillae palatinae	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Tonsillae palatinae from the calf		
Trabeculum	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Trabeculum from the calf		
Trachea	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Trachea from the calf		
Trigonum vesicae et Musculus sphincter	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Tissue of the vesica from the region of the Trigonum vesicae and muscular tissue from the sphincter of the Vesica from the calf		
Truncus coeliacus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Arteria coeliaca (Truncus coeliacus) from the calf		
Truncus encephali	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Brain stem from the calf		
Truncus encephali	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Hypothalamus, Thalamus, Corpora quadrigemina, Pons, Medulla oblongata from the calf		
Tuba auditiva	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Tuba auditiva from the calf		
Tuba uterina	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Tuba uterina from the cow		
Tunica mucosa intestini tenuis	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Mucosa from the different regions of the small intestine from the pig		
Tunica mucosa nasi	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Tunica mucosa nasi from the calf		
Tunica mucosa recti	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Tunica mucosa recti from the pig		
Tunica mucosa ventriculi	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Mucosa from the different regions of the stomach from the pig.		
Ureter	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Ureter from the calf		
Urethra feminina	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Urethra feminina from the calf		
Urethra masculina	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Urethra masculina from the calf		
Uterus	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Uterus from the cow		
Uvea	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Uvea from the calf		
Vagina	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Vagina from the cow		
Vaginae synoviales tendinum	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Tendon sheaths from the regions of the forefoot and hind foot from the calf		
Valva trunci pulmonalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Semilunar valves of the Arteria pulmonalis from the calf		
Valvula aortae	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Semilunar valves of the Aorta from the calf		
Valvula mitralis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Valvula mitralis from the calf		
Valvula tricuspidalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Valvula tricuspidalis from the calf		
Vena cava	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Vena cava, Vena cava cranialis and caudalis from the calf		
Vena femoralis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Vena femoralis from the calf		
Vena portae	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Vena portae from the calf		
Vena saphena magna	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Vena saphena magna from the calf		
Vena tibialis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Vena tibialis from the calf		
Ventriculus	<i>Sus scrofa</i> var. <i>domesticus</i>	Ventriculus from the pig		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Animal substance	Scientific name of the animal	Specification	AS	Reference to standard
Vertebra cervicalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Vertebra cervicalis from the calf		
Vertebra coccygea	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Vertebra coccygea from the calf		
Vertebra lumbalis	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Vertebra lumbalis from the calf		
Vesica fellea	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Vesica fellea from the calf		
Vesica urinaria	<i>Bos taurus</i> L.	Vesica urinaria from the calf		
Vespa crabro	<i>Vespa crabro</i> L.	The whole <i>Vespa crabro</i> L.		Ph. Fr.
Vespa vulgaris	<i>Vespa vulgaris</i> , e.g. <i>Dolichovespula saxonia</i>	Living workers of wasps living in buildings, e.g. <i>Dolichovespula saxonia</i>		Ph. Fr.
Vipera berus	<i>Vipera berus</i> L.	Freeze dried venom of <i>Vipera berus</i> L.		

## Appendix 2.4.:

### Starting materials that can be described chemically

Note: Starting Materials marked with "AS" are also used as active substances.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	Abbreviated definition	AS	Reference to standard
Acidum arsenicosum	Arsenious trioxide		Ph. Eur.
Acidum benzoicum	Benzoic acid	AS	Ph. Eur.
Acidum citricum monohydricum	Citric acid monohydrate		Ph. Eur.
Acidum hexachloroplatinicum	Hexachloroplatinic acid		HAB
Acidum hydrochloricum	Dilute hydrochloric acid (Hydrochloric acid 10 per cent)		HAB / Ph. Eur.
Acidum lacticum	Lactic acid	AS	Ph. Eur.
Acidum nitricum	Nitric acid		Ph. Eur.
Acidum phosphoricum	Dilute phosphoric acid		Ph. Eur.
Acidum phosphoricum concentratum	Concentrated phosphoric acid		Ph. Eur.
Acidum silicicum	Precipitated silicon dioxide		DAB
Acidum sulphuricum	Sulphuric acid		Ph. Eur.
Acidum tartaricum	Tartaric acid		Ph. Eur.
Aesculinum	Aesculin		DAB / HAB
Aethiops antimonialis	<i>see Hydrargyrum stibiato-sulphuratum</i>		
Alumen	<i>see Aluminium-kalium-sulphuricum</i>		
Alumen chromicum	Potassium chromium(III) sulphate		
Aluminium-kalium-sulphuricum	Alum (Aluminium potassium sulphate)		Ph. Eur.
Ammoniae solutio concentrata	Concentrated ammonia solution		Ph. Eur.
Ammonium carbonicum	Mixture of ammonium hydrogen carbonate and ammonium carbamate of varying proportions		HAB
Antimonium tartaricum	<i>see Kalium stibyltartaricum</i>		
Argenti carbonas (Argentum carbonicum)	Silver carbonate		
Argentum metallicum	Metallic silver		HAB
Argentum nitricum	Silver nitrate		Ph. Eur.
Arsenicum album	<i>see Acidum arsenicosum</i>		
Aurum chloratum	Hydrogen tetrachloroaurate(III)		HAB
Aurum chloratum natronatum	<i>see Natrium tetrachloroauratum</i>		
Aurum metallicum	Metallic gold		HAB
Aurum metallicum foliatum	Gold leaf		
Aurum muriaticum natronatum	<i>see Natrium tetrachloroauratum</i>		
Aurum sulphuratum	Mixture of gold(I)- and gold(III) sulphide		
Barium citricum	Barium citrate		
Barium jodatum	Barium iodide monohydrate		HAB
Bismutum metallicum	Metallic bismuth		HAB
Bismutum subnitricum	Bismuth subnitrate		Ph.Eur.
Borax	<i>see Natrium tetraboracium</i>		
Calcareo formicica (Calcium formicicum)	Calcium formate, obtained from Conchae and Acidum Formicae (see Appendix 2.3.)		
Calcii hydroxidum	Calcium hydroxide		Ph. Eur.
Calcii oxidum	Freshly burnt lime or marble		
Calcium carbonicum	Calcium carbonate		Ph. Eur.
Calcium phosphoricum	Calcium hydrogen phosphate dihydrate		Ph. Eur.
Calcium sulphuricum	Calcium sulphate dihydrate		Ph. Eur.
Camphora	D-Camphor	AS	Ph. Eur.
Cerussa	<i>see Plumbum subcarbonicum</i>		
Chininum sulphuricum	Quinine sulphate		Ph. Eur.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	Abbreviated definition	AS	Reference to standard
Chlorophyllum	Water-soluble purified copper complex of an extract from grass which by sodium base hydrolysis is water-soluble. Main constituents are sodium salts of chlorophylline a and b		
Cholesterinum	Cholesterol ( <i>Ovis aries</i> L.)	AS	HAB / Ph. Eur.
Cinnabaris	see <i>Hydrargyrum sulphuratum rubrum</i>		
Cobaltum metallicum	Metallic cobalt		HAB
Creosotum	Mixture of guaiacol, creosol and cresols obtained by distillation of beech tar. ( <i>Fagus silvatica</i> L.)		HAB
Cupric tetrammine sulphate monohydrate	[Tetramminecopper(II) sulphate monohydrate]		
Cupro-Stibium	Alloy of 1 part of Copper and 1 part of antimony		
Cuprum aceticum	Copper(II) acetate		HAB
Cuprum citricum	Copper(II) citrate		
Cuprum metallicum	Metallic copper	AS	Ph. Eur.
Cuprum oxydulatum rubrum	Copper(I) oxide	AS	
Cuprum sulphuricum	Copper(II) sulphate pentahydrate		Ph. Eur.
Ferrosi sulphas	see <i>Ferrum sulphuricum</i>		
Ferrum citricum	Iron(III) citrate, containing not less than 18.0 and not more than 20.0 per cent of Fe (Ar 55.85)		
Ferrum gluconicum	Iron(II) gluconate (Ferrous gluconate)		
Ferrum metallicum	Iron obtained by reduction or sublimation		Ph.Eur.
Ferrum metallicum reductum	Iron obtained by reduction of the mineral Siderite		HAB
Ferrum phosphoricum	Hydrated iron(III) phosphate		HAB
Ferrum sesquichloratum	Aqueous solution of iron(III) chloride hexahydrate		HAB
Ferrum sulphuricum	Ferrous sulphate heptahydrate		Ph. Eur.
Ferrum ustum	Iron(II, III) oxide - obtained by glowing and forging metallic iron - containing not less than 71.0 and not more than 75.0 per cent of Fe (Ar 55.85)		
Ferrum(III)-kalium-tartaricum	Iron(III) potassium tartrate (Ferric potassium tartrate)		
Glonoinum	Solution of glycerol trinitrate (1 per cent) in Ethanol 96 per cent		HAB
Hydrargyri sulphas	Mercury(II) sulphate	AS	
Hydrargyrum bichloratum	Mercury(II) chloride		HAB
Hydrargyrum bicyanatatum	Mercury(II) cyanide		HAB
Hydrargyrum biiodatum	Mercury(II) iodide		HAB
Hydrargyrum chloratum	Mercury(I) chloride		HAB
Hydrargyrum metallicum	Metallic mercury		HAB
Hydrargyrum nitricum oxydulatum	Mercury(I) nitrate dihydrate		HAB
Hydrargyrum stibiato-sulphuratum	Trituration of equal parts of Stibium sulphuratum nigrum and Hydrargyrum sulphuratum nigrum		HAB

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	Abbreviated definition	AS	Reference to standard
Hydrargyrum sulphuratum nigrum	Mixture of mainly mercury(II) sulphide and Sulphur		HAB
Hydrargyrum sulphuratum rubrum	Red mercury(II)-sulphide		HAB
Jodum	Iodine		Ph. Eur.
Kalii hydrogenosulphas	Potassium hydrogen sulphate <i>R</i>		Ph. Eur.
Kalium arsenicosum	Potassium arsenite		Ph. Fr.
Kalium bichromicum	Potassium dichromate		HAB
Kalium bisulphuricum	<i>see Kalium hydrogenosulphas</i>		
Kalium carbonicum	Potassium carbonate		Ph. Eur.
Kalium chloratum	Potassium chloride		Ph. Eur.
Kalium iodatum	Potassium iodide		Ph. Eur.
Kalium nitricum	Potassium nitrate		Ph. Eur.
Kalium phosphoricum	Potassium dihydrogen phosphate		Ph. Eur.
Kalium stibyltartaricum	Potassium di $\mu$ tartratobis[antimonate(III)] trihydrate		HAB
Kalium sulphuratum	Crude sulphurated potash, containing a mixture of mainly potassium trisulphide and potassium metabisulphite (dipotassium pyrosulphite)		
Kalium sulphuricum	Potassium sulphate		Ph. Eur.
Liquor natrii silicici	Sodium silicate solution (water glass, soluble glass) containing 35 per cent of changing amounts of sodium trisilicate and sodium tetrasilicate		DAB 6
Lithium carbonicum	Lithium carbonate		Ph. Eur.
Magnesium chloratum	Magnesium chloride hexahydrate		Ph. Eur.
Magnesium hydroxydatum	Magnesium hydroxide		Ph. Eur.
Magnesium metallicum	Metallic magnesium	AS	HAB
Magnesium phosphoricum	Magnesium hydrogen phosphate trihydrate		Ph. Eur.
Magnesium phosphoricum acidum 20%	Aqueous solution of magnesium dihydrogen phosphate (20 per cent m/m)		
Magnesium sulphuricum	Magnesium sulphate heptahydrate		Ph. Eur.
Mercurius auratus	Gold-mercury alloy, containing at least 32.0 and not more than 35.0 per cent Au (Ar 196,97) and at least 65.0 and not more than 68.0 per cent Hg (Ar 200,59)		
Mercurius bijodatus	<i>see Hydrargyrum biiodatum</i>		
Mercurius cyanatus	<i>see Hydrargyrum bicyanatum</i>		
Mercurius dulcis	<i>see Hydrargyrum chloratum</i>		
Mercurius solubilis Hahnemanni	Mixture of mainly mercury(II) amidonitrate and metallic mercury		HAB
Mercurius sublimatus corrosivus	<i>see Hydrargyrum bichloratum</i>		
Mercurius vivus	<i>see Hydrargyrum metallicum</i>		
Minium	Minium [red lead, lead(II,IV) oxide]		HAB
Natrii carbonas decahydricus	Sodium carbonate decahydrate		Ph. Eur.
Natrium carbonicum	Sodium carbonate monohydrate	AS	Ph. Eur.
Natrium chloratum	Sodium chloride		Ph. Eur.
Natrium phosphoricum	Disodium phosphate dodecahydrate		Ph. Eur.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	Abbreviated definition	AS	Reference to standard
Natrium sulphuricum	Anhydrous sodium sulphate		Ph. Eur.
Natrium tetraboracium	Borax		Ph. Eur.
Natrium tetrachloroauratum	Sodium tetrachloroaurate(III) dihydrate		HAB
Petroleum rectificatum	Petroleum spirit boiling between 180 and 220 °C obtained by rectification of crude oil	AS	HAB
Phosphorus	Yellow phosphorus	AS	HAB
Phosphorus ruber	Red amorphous phosphorus		
Phosphorus metallicus (niger)	Black metallic phosphorus		
Platinum chloratum	<i>see Acidum hexachloroplatinicum</i>		
Platinum metallicum	Metallic platin	AS	HAB
Plumbum aceticum	Lead(II) acetate		HAB
Plumbum iodatum	Lead(II) iodide		
Plumbum metallicum	Metallic lead		HAB
Plumbum silicicum	Lead(II) meta silicate, obtained by smelting Cerussit and Quartz.		
Plumbum subcarbonicum	Basic lead(II) carbonate		
Saccharum Lactis	Lactose-Monohydrate ( <i>Bos taurus</i> L.)		Ph. Eur.
Saccharum Sacchari	Sucrose obtained from the stems of <i>Saccharum officinarum</i> L.		Ph. Eur.
Silicea	<i>see Acidum silicicum</i>		
Silicea colloidalis	Colloidal silica, directly obtained in the manufacture of the finished product by reaction of adjusted amounts of aqueous solutions of sodium silicate and citric acid monohydrate.	AS	
Stannosi chloridum dihydricum	Stannous chloride dihydrate		Ph. Eur.
Stannum hydroxydatum	Tin(II) hydroxide		
Stannum metallicum	Metallic tin	AS	HAB
Stannum silicicum	Mixture or melt from silica hydroxide and Tin(II,IV) hydroxide, with a content of at least 47.0 per cent am not more than 57 per cent Sn (Ar 118,71).		
Stibium arsenicosum	Mixture of equal parts of antimony(V) oxide and arsenic(III) oxide		HAB
Stibium metallicum	Metallic antimony		HAB
Stibium sulphuratum aurantiacum	Mixture of antimony(V) sulphide and Sulphur		HAB
Stibium sulphuratum nigrum	Antimony(III) sulphide		HAB
Sulphur	Sublimed Sulphur	AS	HAB
Sulphur iodatum	Cooled melt of Sulphur and iodine		HAB
Sulphur iodatum	Mixture of 4 parts of iodine and 1 part of Sulphur carefully smelted together		Ph. Fr.
Sulphur selenosum	Mixture obtained by smelting 1 part of Selen together with 99 parts of Sulphur.		
Tartarus depuratus	Potassium hydrogen tartrate from purified tartar		Ph.Eur.
Tartarus stibiatus	<i>see Kalium stibyltartaricum</i>		
Zincum isovalerianicum	Zinc isovalerate dihydrate		HAB
Zincum metallicum	Metallic zinc	AS	HAB
Zincum valerianicum	<i>see Zincum isovalerianicum</i>		

## Appendix 2.5.:

### Starting materials that have undergone special treatment

Note: Starting Materials marked with "AS" are also used as active substances.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	Abbreviated definition	AS	Reference to standard (for the plant)
<i>Aconitum napellus</i> L. Plumbocultum	Whole fresh plants of <i>Aconitum napellus</i> L., collected at the start of flowering (pre-treated with a lead containing fertilizer).		(HAB)
<i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L. Cuproculta	Whole fresh plants of <i>Atropa bella-donna</i> L., without woody lower stem sections, collected at the end of flowering (pre-treated with a copper containing fertilizer).		
<i>Chamomilla recutita</i> (L.) Rauschert cuproculta	Fresh underground parts of <i>Chamomilla recutita</i> (L.) Rauschert (pre-treated with a copper containing fertilizer).		
<i>Chelidonium majus</i> L. Ferro cultum	Fresh rhizome and adherent roots of <i>Chelidonium majus</i> L., collected during late autumn or on the appearance of the first shoots (pre-treated with a iron containing fertilizer).		(HAB)
<i>Cichorium intybus</i> L. Plumbocultum	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Cichorium intybus</i> L. (pre-treated with a lead containing fertilizer).		(HAB)
<i>Cichorium intybus</i> L. Stannocultum	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Cichorium intybus</i> L. (pre-treated with a tin containing fertilizer).		(HAB)
<i>Cichorium intybus</i> L. Stannocultum, Radix	Fresh root of <i>Cichorium intybus</i> L. ssp. <i>intybus</i> and <i>Cichorium intybus</i> L. ssp. <i>sativum</i> (DC) Janchen, collected at flowering time (pre-treated with a tin containing fertilizer).		
<i>Equisetum arvense</i> L. Silicea cultum	Fresh green sterile aerial parts of <i>Equisetum arvense</i> L. (pre-treated with a silicate containing fertilizer).		
<i>Hypericum perforatum</i> L. Auro cultum	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Hypericum perforatum</i> L., collected at flowering time (pre-treated with a gold containing fertilizer).		(HAB)
<i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers. Argentoculta	Fresh leaves of <i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers., harvested in the first year of growth (pre-treated with a silver containing fertilizer).		(HAB)
<i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers. Mercurioculta	Fresh leaves of <i>Kalanchoe pinnata</i> (Lam.) Pers., harvested in the first year of growth (pre-treated with a mercury containing fertilizer).		(HAB)
<i>Melissa officinalis</i> L. Cuproculta	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Melissa officinalis</i> L. (pre-treated with a copper containing fertilizer).		(HAB)
<i>Nasturtium officinale</i> R. Br. Mercuriocultum	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Nasturtium officinale</i> R. Br., collected at flowering time (pre-treated with a mercury containing fertilizer).		(HAB)
<i>Nicotiana tabacum</i> L. Cuproculta	Fresh leaves of <i>Nicotiana tabacum</i> L. (pre-treated with a copper containing fertilizer).		(HAB)
<i>Primula veris</i> L. Auro culta	Fresh flowers of <i>Primula veris</i> L. (pre-treated with a gold containing fertilizer).		
<i>Taraxacum officinale</i> agg. F.H. Wigg. stannocultum	Whole fresh flowering plants of <i>Taraxacum officinale</i> agg. F.H. Wigg. (pre-treated with a tin containing fertilizer).		(HAB)

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	Abbreviated definition	AS	Reference to standard (for the plant)
<i>Thuja occidentalis</i> L. Argento culta	Fresh, leafy, one-year-old twigs of <i>Thuja occidentalis</i> L. (pre-treated with a silver containing fertilizer).		(HAB)
<i>Urtica dioica</i> L. Ferro culta	Fresh aerial parts of <i>Urtica dioica</i> L, collected at flowering time (pre-treated with an iron containing fertilizer).		
<i>Urtica dioica</i> L. Ferro culta	Fresh underground parts of <i>Urtica dioica</i> L., collected at flowering time (pre-treated with an iron containing fertilizer).		
<i>Urtica dioica</i> L. Ferro culta	Dried aerial parts of <i>Urtica dioica</i> L., collected at flowering time (pre-treated with an iron containing fertilizer).		

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Appendix 2.6.:

## Compositions

Note: Substances marked with "AS" are also used as active substances.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	AS	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method
Alkali comp.		<i>Commiphora</i> Jacq. species (Myrrh)/ Kalium carbonicum / Quarz / Trona	Alkali comp. is made from: Potassium carbonate / Trona / Quartz and Myrrh. Potassium carbonate, Trona and Quartz are intensively triturated and mixed with an organic binder (Myrrh).
Anis-Pyrit		<i>Pimpinella anisum</i> L. / Pyrite / <i>Saccharum officinarum</i> L.	1 g Anis-Pyrit contains: Pimpinella anisum, Fructus tostus 0.33 g / Pyrit 0.33 g / Saccharum tostum 0.33 g. Warmed Pyrite powder and melted Cane sugar are thoroughly mixed, the powdered Anisseed added, with final thorough mixing.
Apis cum Levistico		<i>Apis mellifica</i> L. / <i>Levisticum officinale</i> W. D. J. Koch (Radix)	1 g Apis cum Levistico Ø (= D1) is made from 0.1 g Apis mellifica / 0.1 g aqueous extract of Levisticum, Radix (Drug to extract = 4:1). The bees are killed, comminuted and mixed with a freshly prepared aqueous extract of Levisticum, Radix (Drug to extract = 4:1) and Glycerol 85%. The liquid is further processed immediately.
Argentum-Corpus vitreum		Argentum metallicum / Corpus vitreum ( <i>Bos taurus</i> L. or <i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i> L.)	Fresh eye ball (Corpus vitreum) is cleaned and mixed with a solution made of Silver nitrate, concentrated ammonia solution and purified water and mixed. After addition of a solution of Glucose monohydrate in purified water the mixture is gently warmed so that the Silver is reduced to the metal. After filtering, the residue is dried with Lactose Monohydrate, being adjusted to give a final Silver content of 1%.
Arnica-Cerebrum		<i>Arnica montana</i> L. / Cerebrum, Cerebellum, Brain stem ( <i>Bos taurus</i> L. or <i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i> L.)	1 g Arnica-Cerebrum D1 contains: Arnica, Planta tota, pressed juice 0.05 g/ Cerebrum 0.05 g (Cerebrum = Cerebrum, Cerebellum, Brain stem = 2+1+1). The cleaned ingredients of Cerebrum are mixed with the fresh pressed plant juice of Arnica montana and intensively triturated. Water for injection is added and the mixture potentised to make the D1 potency. The D1 potency is further processed immediately.
Calcium silicicum comp.		<i>Arnica montana</i> L. / Calcii oxidum / Camphora / Kalium carbonicum / Quarz / <i>Quercus robur</i> L. and <i>Quercus petraea</i> (Matt.) Liebl. / <i>Triticum aestivum</i> L. emend Fiori et Paol.	Calcium silicicum comp. is manufactured from: Silicate melt (obtained from Quartz / Potassium carbonate / Calcium oxide) / Arnica latex / Dried Extract of Oak bark / Camphor / Essential oil from Arnica montana root / fresh wheat gluten. The Silicate melt is triturated with a mixture of the Arnica latex and dried extract of Oak bark. Finally the Camphor and essential oil of Arnica is added. The whole is further triturated well, fresh wheat gluten added and the whole kneaded to make a paste. This is then dried and powdered.
Carbo Betulae cum Methano		<i>Betula pendula</i> Roth / Methane	Carbo Betulae (Charcoal from the Birch) saturated with Methane is used: Powdered Carbo Betulae is heated under a vacuum. After heating and during cooling Carbo Betulae is saturated with Methane.
Causticum Hahnemanni		Calcium hydroxide / Kalii hydrogenosulphas	HAB
Causticum		Calcii oxidum / Kalii hydrogenosulphas	Ph. Fr.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	AS	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method
Chinetum arsenicosum		<i>Cinchona pubescens</i> Vahl	Arsenic acid - bound alkaloid complex obtained from the bark of <i>Cinchona pubescens</i> Vahl
Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae cum Magnesio phosphorico	AS	<i>Avena sativa</i> L. / Magnesium phosphoricum	1. Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae (Ash of the fruit of <i>Avena sativa</i> , oats): Oats are moistened with water to start germination, dried and ashed. 2. Ash of oats with Magnesium hydrogen phosphate: Equal parts of ash of oats and Magnesium hydrogen phosphate are mixed together.
Cinis Capsellae comp.	AS	<i>Artemisia absinthium</i> L. / <i>Capsella bursa-pastoris</i> (L.) Med. / Cuprum sulphuricum / Ferrum sulphuricum / Halite / Kalium carbonicum / <i>Plantago lanceolata</i> L. / Plumbum subcarbonicum / <i>Rosa centifolia</i> L. / <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.	Cinis Capsellae comp. is made from: water soluble salts of-ash from Absinthii herba, Capsellae bursae-pastoris herba; Plantagininis lanceolatae herba / Potassium carbonate / Halite / Ferrous sulphate/ Copper sulphate/ Basic lead (II) carbonate (Cerussa). The plants are ashed. The water soluble ash salts, Potassium carbonate, Halite, Copper sulphate and Ferrous sulphate are mixed together. Wine vinegar, in which fresh Rose petals have been soaked, is added. After the reaction is completed, Cerussa is added. After completion of the reaction the substance is dried in a desiccator and powdered.
Cissus - Ossa		<i>Aves</i> variae, e.g. <i>Phasianus colchicus</i> Linnaeus (Ossae) / <i>Cissus gongylodes</i> (Bak.) Burch.	1 g Cissus-Ossa contains: Ethanol extract from: <i>Cissus gongylodes</i> , aerial root 0.5 g / Ossa 0.5 g. The bones of Partridge or Pheasant are cleaned, boiled, powdered and mixed with equal parts of Lactose Monohydrate. To this mixture add the mother tincture of <i>Cissus gongylodes</i> , aerial roots dried (HAB, Method 3c).
Corpus vitreum / Stannum		Corpus vitreum ( <i>Bos taurus</i> L. or <i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i> L.) / Stannum hydroxatum	1 g Corpus vitreum-Stannum D1 contains: Corpus vitreum 0.08 g / Stannum hydroxydatum 0.02 g. A solution of Tin (II) chloride in purified water is mixed with a solution of Sodium carbonate in purified water. The resulting precipitate (Stannum hydroxatum) is added to fresh, minced Corpus vitreum and thoroughly mixed. The mixture is diluted in the proportion 1:10 with water for injection to make the D1 potency. The D1 potency is further processed immediately.
Cuprum-Ren		Glandula suprarenalis / Renes ( <i>Bos taurus</i> L. or <i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i> L.) / Tetrammine copper(II) sulphate	1 g Cuprum-Ren (= D1) contains: Glandula suprarenalis 0.023 g / Ren 0.060 g / Tetrammine copper(II) sulphate 0.017 g. The fresh, cleaned animal ingredient is mixed with a small amount of water for injection and Tetrammine copper (II) sulphate, and triturated together. Afterwards the rest of the water for injection is added to make the D1 potency, and the solution is potentiated. The D1 potency is further processed immediately.
Equisetum cum Sulphure tostum		<i>Equisetum arvense</i> L. / Sulphur	Equisetum cum Sulphure tostum is made from <i>Equisetum arvense</i> , Herba tosta / Sulphur. <i>Equisetum arvense</i> Herba is mixed with the Sulphur and roasted.
Ferrum hydroxydatum		Ferrum metallicum reductum/ <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.	Ferrum hydroxydatum is manufactured from Ferrum metallicum reductum and wine vinegar. Iron that previously has been obtained from Siderite by reduction, is covered with a Wine vinegar solution and lightly warmed for several days. Then the solution is filtered, and the residue washed and left to react with air. The oxidised Iron is reduced to powder.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	AS	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method
Ferrum pomatum	AS	Ferrum metallicum / <i>Malus sylvestris</i> Mill.	1 g of the D1 contains: Fe 5 mg. Unripe apples are pressed; the juice is mixed with Ferrum metallicum. The mixture is left for several days and then warmed to about 50 °C. Afterwards the solution is filtered and mixed with Ethanol 96%.
Ferrum-Quartz		Ferrum sulphuricum, Mel, Quartz, Vinum ( <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.)	A mixture of Ferrous sulphate, Honey, White wine, and calcinated Quartz is made. This mixture is heated and dried under vacuum.
Ferrum rosatum		Ferrum sidereum / <i>Rosa centifolia</i> L.	Ferrum rosatum is a tincture manufactured from <i>Rosa centifolia</i> fresh flowers to which Ferrum sidereum D1 is added in a concentration of 1% with respect to the fresh plant.
Hepar-Magnesium		Hepar ( <i>Bos taurus</i> L. or <i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i> L.) / Magnesium hydroxydatum	1 g Hepar-Magnesium D1 contains: Hepar 0.06 g / Magnesium hydroxydatum 0.04 g. A solution of Magnesium chloride in purified water is mixed with a solution of Sodium hydroxide in purified water. The resulting precipitate (Magnesium hydroxyatum) is mixed with chopped pieces of liver and then together with honey, it is finely triturated. The mixture is mixed with water for injection (HAB, Method 5b) or Glycerol 85% (HAB, Method 42), and potentised to make the D1 potency. This D1 potency is used immediately.
Hepar-Stannum		Hepar ( <i>Bos taurus</i> L. or <i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i> L.) / Stannum hydroxydatum	1 g Hepar-Stannum contains: Hepar 0.08 g / Stannum hydroxydatum 0.02 g. A solution of Tin (II) chloride in purified water is mixed with a solution of Sodium carbonate in purified water. The resulting precipitate (Stannum hydroxyatum) is mixed with chopped pieces of liver and then with honey thoroughly triturated. The mixture is mixed with water for injection (HAB, Method 5b) or Glycerol 85% (HAB, Method 42), and potentised to make the D1 potency. This D1 potency is used immediately.
Hepar sulphuris		<i>Ostrea edulis</i> L. / Sulphur	HAB
Kalium aceticum comp.		Antimonite / <i>Corallium rubrum</i> L. / <i>Crocus sativus</i> L. / Kalium carbonicum / Acetum Vini destillatum ( <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.) / Spiritus e Vino ( <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.)	Kalium aceticum comp. is manufactured from: Potassium carbonate / Distilled wine vinegar / Antimonite / <i>Crocus sativus</i> tincture / Spiritus e Vino / <i>Corallium rubrum</i> .  Potassium carbonate / Distilled wine vinegar / Antimonite / <i>Crocus sativus</i> tincture / <i>Corallium rubrum</i> and Spiritus e Vino are stepwise combined and repeatedly distilled. The resultant dried residue is used.
Kalium carbonicum e cinere Fagi silvaticae	AS	<i>Fagus silvatica</i> L.	Beechwood is ashed. One part of ash and 2.5 parts of distilled water are mixed and repeatedly stirred. The mixture is filtered, and the insoluble residue discarded. The filtrate is evaporated to dryness. The dry residue is subjected to this process two more times.
Lapis Cancri praeparatus		<i>Astacus astacus</i> L. / Flint / <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.	Lapis Cancri praeparatus is prepared through treating a mixture of equal parts of powdered Flint and Lapis Cancri with distilled Wine vinegar.
Lapis Cancri / Flint		<i>Astacus astacus</i> L. / Flint	1 g Lapis Cancri / Flint contains: Lapis Cancri 0.5 g / Flint 0.5 g: Finely powdered Lapis Cancri and Flint are thoroughly mixed with Spiritus e Vino and the slurry treated with water. The resultant dry residue is the substance.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	AS	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method
Myrrha comp.		Aurum metallicum foliatum / <i>Boswellia</i> species / <i>Commiphora</i> Jacq. species	1 g Myrrha comp. D1 is made from: Myrrha 0.1 g / Aurum metallicum foliatum (gold leaf) 0.001 g and Olibanum. Myrrha and gold leaf are bound together with the aid of heat, incense smoke (from Olibanum) is passed through the mixture. This composition is stirred into molten Lactose monohydrate. After cooling it is triturated for one hour by hand.
Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø (plant to extraction fluid = 1:3.1)		<i>Onopordum acanthium</i> L. / <i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L.	Digestio prepared from 1 part of the fresh flowerheads of <i>Onopordum acanthium</i> L. and 3.1 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration or water for injections and the addition of 0.004 to 0.04 parts (corresponding to 0.1 to 1%) of <i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L., Herba, Mother tincture (HAB, method 2a).
Plantago lanceolata, Folium rec., with 1-2% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø (plant to extraction fluid = 1:3.1)		<i>Plantago lanceolata</i> L. / <i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L.	Digestio prepared from 1 part of the fresh leaves of <i>Plantago lanceolata</i> L. and 3.1 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration or water for injections and the addition of 0.04 to 0.08 parts (corresponding to 1 to 2%) of <i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L., Herba, Mother tincture (HAB, method 2a).
Plumbum mellitum		Plumbum metallicum / Mel / <i>Saccharum officinarum</i> L.	Plumbum mellitum is prepared from Lead, Honey and Cane sugar. A depression is introduced into a sheet of lead, this is filled with honey, and the whole covered with liquid lead. After cooling it is cut into small pieces, made molten again and then laid out as a sheet with depressions once more. These are filled this time with Cane sugar and covered with molten lead. After cooling it is finely grated and the D1 prepared by trituration with Lactose monohydrate.
Primula veris, Flos rec., with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø (plant to extraction fluid = 1:3.1)		<i>Primula veris</i> L. / <i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L.	Digestio prepared from 1 part of the fresh flowers of <i>Primula veris</i> L. and 3.1 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration or water for injections and the addition of 0.004 to 0.04 parts (corresponding to 0.1 to 1%) of <i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L., Herba, Mother tincture (HAB, method 2a).
Primula veris, Flos rec., with 0.6% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø (plant to extraction fluid = 1:12.35)		<i>Primula veris</i> L. / <i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L.	Prepared by temperature steered digestio from 1 part of the fresh flowers of <i>Primula veris</i> L. and 12.35 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration and the addition of 0.08 parts (corresponding to 0.6%) of <i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L., Herba, Mother tincture (HAB, method 2a).

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	AS	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method
Quartz cum Ferro sulphurico		Ferrosi sulphas / Quartz	5 parts of Quartz are incinerated to red heat at 800°C and afterwards cut into small pieces. The Quartz is triturated with 9.15 parts of Ferrous sulphate. 20 parts of white wine are heated to boiling, and after cooling to 35 °C, made into a paste with the Quartz and Ferrous sulphate mixture. 10 parts of Honey and 20 parts of Lactose are added and they are mixed well together. The mixture is placed under vacuum and dried at a suitable minimum temperature. While still warm, the tough brittle substance is triturated with enough Lactose to make 100 parts (Mother substance=D1).
Quercus robur/petrae e cortice cum Calcio carbonico		<i>Quercus robur</i> L., <i>Quercus petraea</i> (Matt.) Liebl.	<p>1. Oak bark ash: Oak bark is cut into pieces and reduced to ash. The ash is spread out for a week in the air, in a thin layer and turned daily. It is then made into a slurry with Carbon dioxide saturated water.</p> <p>2. Saturated solution of Oak bark ash: 0.1 part of cleaned Oak bark ash is mixed with 6100 parts of purified water (when solutions for injections are being prepared, water for injections is used) and boiled under reflux for 5 minutes. The cooled solution is filtered (for solutions for injections it is decanted). The result is a saturated aqueous solution of Calcium carbonicum e cinerere Quercus (= Calcium carbonicum Solutum).</p> <p>3. Quercus robur/petrae e cortice cum Calcio carbonico Solution = D6: Boiled Oak bark according to HAB Method 23a (Ø=D1) is Oak bark ash potentised to D6 with Calcium carbonicum Solutum.</p>
Silex – Lapis cancri solutus		Silex (Flint) / Kalium nitricum / Lapis cancri / Acetum Vini dest. ( <i>Vitis vinifera</i> L.)	Calcium silicate is precipitated by adding an aqueous solution of Potassium silicate (made from Flint and Potassium nitrate) to an aqueous solution of Calcium acetate (made from Lapis Cancri and distilled Wine vinegar in several steps) and dissolved in distilled Wine vinegar to give a clear solution.
Solutio alkalina		Composted Leafy plants / Cream of Tartar	An aqueous solution made from the ash of a special compost. Compost production proceeds with green parts of plants, soil and a preparation from Tartar.
Solutio Ferri comp.		Kalium carbonicum / Ferrum(III)-Kalium-tartaricum / Sulphur / Trona / Acidum tartaricum	Solutio Ferri comp. is prepared from: Potassium carbonate / Ferric potassium tartrate / Sulphur / Trona / Acidum tartaricum. Potassium carbonate, Trona and Sulphur are melted together. The resulting melt is dissolved in distilled water and alternately heated and subjected to an intensive air-stream. After this procedure Ferric potassium tartrate and Acidum tartaricum are added. The resulting substance is exposed to the light.
Solutio Sacchari comp.		Acidum sulphuricum / <i>Betula pendula</i> Roth / Kalium carbonicum/ Ferrum(III)-Kalium-tartaricum / Mel / Quartz / Trona	Solutio Sacchari comp. is made from: Carbo Betulae / Potassium carbonate / Ferric potassium tartrate / Honey / Quartz / Trona. Potassium carbonate, Quartz and Carbo Betulae are melted together. The melt is dissolved in water to produce a clear solution, to which diluted Sulphuric acid, Honey and Ferric potassium tartrate are added.

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	AS	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method
Solutio Siliceae comp.		Kalium carbonicum / Marmor / Quartz / Sulphur / Trona	Solutio Siliceae comp. is prepared from: Potassium carbonate / Marmor / Quartz / Trona and Sulphur. Quartz, Potassium carbonate and Trona are melted together and subsequently a clear aqueous solution is produced. In a further step Marble is added and vapour from burning Sulphur is passed through the mixture followed by air.
Stannum mellitum		Stannum metallicum / Mel / Saccharum officinarum L.	Stannum mellitum is manufactured from Tin with Honey and Cane sugar. A depression is introduced into a sheet of tin, this is filled with liquid honey, and the whole covered with molten tin. After cooling it is cut into small pieces, spread out into a new sheet with a depression worked into it. The depressions are filled with sugar this time and covered with molten tin. After cooling it is finely grated and triturated with Lactose monohydrate to produce the D1.
Trabeculum comp.		Acidum Formicae / Ammoniae solutio concentrata 25% / Cuprum sulphuricum / Hydrargyrum biiodatum / Kalium iodatum / Trabeculum ( <i>Bos taurus</i> L.)	1 g of Trabeculum comp. (=D1) is prepared from: 0.1 g Trabeculum / 0.1 g Acidum Formicae (5%) / 0.005 g Cuprum sulphuricum / 0.007 g Ammoniae solutio concentrata / 0.03 g Hydrargyrum biiodatum / 0.0225 g Kalium iodatum. Trabeculum is treated with an aqueous solution of Acidum Formicae to make a pulp with a smooth consistency and then mixed with an Ammoniacal solution of Copper sulphate. Then a solution of Mercury (II) iodide and Potassium iodide and finally Lactose monohydrate is added. After drying, the whole mixture is rubbed to a uniform powder.
Uvea comp.		Acidum Formicae / Acidum ascorbicum / Liquor natrii silicici / Ferrosi sulphas / <i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L. / Magnesium phosphoricum acidum / Uvea ( <i>Bos taurus</i> L.)	1 g Uvea comp. contains: Uvea bovis 1.00 g / Magnesium phosphoricum acidum 0.10 g / Acidum ascorbicum 0.10 g / Ferrum sulphuricum 0.33 g / Liquor natrii silicici 1.00 g / <i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> , Planta tota Rh Ø (HAB, Method 21) 1.00 g. Uvea is treated with an aqueous solution of Acidum Formicae to make a pulp with a smooth consistency and then mixed with a solution of Magnesium phosphate dihydrate and Sodium silicate. Then an aqueous solution of Ferrous sulphate and Ascorbic acid are added, and finally <i>Hyoscyamus</i> Planta tota Rh Ø is added. After drying, the substance is powdered.
Viscum Mali cum Argento		<i>Viscum album</i> L. / Argentum carbonicum	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>album</i> L. (Host tree: <i>Malus domestica</i> Boekh.; Apple tree) with addition of silver carbonate ( $10^{-8}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant).
Viscum Mali cum Cupro		<i>Viscum album</i> L. / Cuprum carbonicum (Malachite)	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>album</i> L. (Host tree: <i>Malus domestica</i> Boekh.; Apple tree) with addition of copper carbonate (Malachite) ( $10^{-8}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant).
Viscum Mali cum Hydrargyro		<i>Viscum album</i> L. / Hydrargyrum sulphuricum	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>album</i> L. (Host tree: <i>Malus domestica</i> Boekh.; Apple tree) with addition of mercury sulphate ( $10^{-8}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant).
Viscum Pini cum Hydrargyro		<i>Viscum album</i> L. / Hydrargyrum sulphuricum	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>austriacum</i> (Wiesb.) Vollmann (Host tree: <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> L.; Pine) with addition of mercury sulphate ( $10^{-8}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant).

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Name of the substance	AS	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method
Viscum Quercus cum Argento		<i>Viscum album</i> L. / Argentum carbonicum	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>album</i> L. (Host tree: <i>Quercus robur</i> L., <i>Quercus petraea</i> (Matt.) Liebl.; Oak) with addition of silver carbonate ( $10^{-8}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant).
Viscum Quercus cum Cupro		<i>Viscum album</i> L. / Cuprum carbonicum (Malachite)	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>album</i> L. (Host tree: <i>Quercus robur</i> L., <i>Quercus petraea</i> (Matt.) Liebl.; Oak) with addition of copper carbonate (Malachite) ( $10^{-8}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant).
Viscum Quercus cum Hydrargyro		<i>Viscum album</i> L. / Hydrargyrum sulphuricum	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>album</i> L. (Host tree: <i>Quercus robur</i> L., <i>Quercus petraea</i> (Matt.) Liebl.; Oak) with addition of mercury sulphate ( $10^{-8}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant).
Viscum Ulmi cum Hydrargyro		<i>Viscum album</i> L. / Hydrargyrum sulphuricum	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of <i>Viscum album</i> ssp. <i>album</i> L. (Host tree: <i>Ulmus caprifolia</i> Gled. [ <i>Ulmus campestris</i> L.], <i>Ulmus glabra</i> Huds.; Elm) with addition of mercury sulphate ( $10^{-8}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant).

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Other Links to the HAB and to the HPUS

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## HAB Monographs of substances used in anthroposophic pharmacy

Achillea millefolium	Barium iodatum
Achillea ferm 33d	Bellis perennis
Acidum arsenicosum	Berberis vulgaris e fructibus
Acidum hydrochloricum	Berberis vulgaris e fructibus Rh
Acidum lacticum	Betula pendula e foliis
Acidum nitricum	Betula pendula ex cortice, ethanol. Decoctum
Acidum phosphoricum	Betula pendula ferm 34e
Acidum silicicum	Bismutum metallicum
Acidum sulphuricum	Bryonia
Aconitum napellus	Bryonia cretica ferm 33b
Aconitum napellus Rh	Calcium carbonicum Hahnemanni
Adonis vernalis ethanol.Digestio	Calendula
Adonis vernalis ferm 33d	Calendula officinalis 2a
Aesculinum	Camphora
Aesculus hippocastanum	Capsella bursa-pastoris, ethanol. Infusum
Aesculus hippocastanum ex cortice, ethanol.	Capsicum annuum
Decoctum	Carbo vegetabilis
Agropyron repens	Carum carvi, ethanol. Decoctum
Allium cepa	Caulophyllum thalictroides
Allium cepa ferm 34a	Cephaelis ipecacuanha, ethanol.Decoctum
Allium sativum	Cerussit
Aluminium-kalium-sulphuricum	Chalkosin
Amanita phalloides	Chamomilla recutita
Ammi visnaga	Chamomilla recutita Rh
Ammonium carbonicum	Chelidonium majus
Anamirta cocculus	Chelidonium majus Rh
Angelica archangelica, ethanol. Decoctum	Chelidonium majus e floribus, ethanol. Digestio
Antimonit	Cholesterolum
Apatit	Chrysanthemum vulgare
Apis mellifica	Chrysolith
Apisinum	Cichorium intybus, ethanol. Decoctum
Aralia racemosa	Cichorium intybus Rh
Argentit	Cimicifuga racemosa, ethanol.Decoctum
Argentum colloidal	Cinchona succirubra, ethanol. Decoctum
Argentum metallicum	Citrullus colocynthis
Argentum nitricum	Cnicus benedictus, ethanol. Decoctum
Arisaema triphyllum	Cobaltum metallicum
Aristolochia clematitis	Cochlearia officinalis
Arnica montana	Colchicum autumnale, ethanol.Digestio
Arnica montana e flore H 10%	Colchicum autumnale Rh
Arnica montana ex planta tota	Conium maculatum
Arnica montana ex planta tota Rh	Convallaria majalis
Artemisia abrotanum	Convallaria majalis, ethanol.Digestio
Artemisia absinthium	Corallium rubrum
Asa foetida	Crataegus, ethanolische Digestio 18d
Asarum europaeum	Cuprit
Atropa bella-donna	Cuprum aceticum
Atropa bella-donna Rh	Cuprum metallicum
Aurum chloratum	Cuprum sulphuricum
Aurum metallicum	Cyclamen purpurascens
Avena sativa 2b	Cytisus scoparius
Avena sativa tota ferm 33c	Dactylopius coccus

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Daphne mezereum	Kalium bichromicum
Datura stramonium	Kalium carbonicum
Delphinium staphisagria	Kalium iodatum
Dioplas	Kalium phosphoricum
Drosera	Kalium stibyltartaricum
Dyskrasit	Kalium sulphuricum
Echinacea	Kalmia latifolia
Echinacea purpurea ex planta tota	Kieserit
Ephedra distachya	Krameria triandra
Equisetum arvense, ethanol. Decoction	Kreosotum
Equisetum arvense Rh	Lachesis mutus
Eucalyptus globulus	Lavandula angustifolia
Eupatorium perfoliatum	Lavandula angustifolia e floribus siccatis
Euphorbium	Ledum palustre
Euphrasia 3c	Leonurus cardiaca 3b
Euphrasia ferm 33c	Levisticum officinale, ethanol. Decoction
Euspongia officinalis	Levisticum officinale Rh
Ferrum metallicum	Lilium lancifolium
Ferrum phosphoricum	Lobaria pulmonaria
Ferrum sesquichloratum solutum	Lobelia inflata
Ferrum sidereum	Lycopodium clavatum
Filipendula ulmaria ferm 34c	Lycopus virginicus
Fluorit	Lytta vesicatoria
Formica rufa	Magnesit
Galenit	Magnesium metallicum
Gallae turcicae	Magnesium phosphoricum
Gelsemium sempervirens, ethanol. Decoction	Malachit
Gentiana lutea, ethanol. Decoction	Malva sylvestris, ethanol. Infusum
Gentiana lutea Rh	Mandragora, ethanol. Decoction
Geum urbanum e rhizomate recente, ethanol. Decoction	Melilotus officinalis
Ginkgo biloba	Mercurialis perennis 2b
Graphites	Mercurialis perennis ferm 34c
Hämatit	Mercurius solubilis Hahnemanni
Halit	Minium
Hamamelis virginiana e foliis	Mucuna pruriens
Hamamelis virginiana, ethanol. Decoction	Myristica fragrans
Hedera helix	Myrrha
Helianthus tuberosus	Naja naja
Humulus lupulus	Nasturtium officinale
Hydrargyrum bichloratum	Natrium carbonicum
Hydrargyrum bicyanatum	Natrium phosphoricum
Hydrargyrum biiodatum	Nicotiana tabacum
Hydrargyrum chloratum	Nicotiana tabacum Rh
Hydrargyrum metallicum	Nitroglycerinum
Hydrargyrum stibiato-sulphuratum	Nontronit
Hyoscyamus niger	Olivenit
Hypericum perforatum ex herba	Onyx
Hypericum perforatum Rh	Origanum majorana
Iodum	Oxalis acetosella e foliis
Iris versicolor	Oxalis acetosella e foliis Rh
Juniperus sabina	Paeonia officinalis, ethanol. Decoction
Kalanchoe	Papaver rhoeas
Kalanchoe Rh	Paris quadrifolia
	Passiflora incarnata

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Petroleum rectificatum	Selenium
Petroselinum crispum convar. crispum	Semecarpus anacardium
Peumus boldus	Serenoa repens
Pharmakolith	Siderit
Phosphorus	Silybium marianum, ethanol. Decoctum
Phytolacca americana	Skorodit
Plumbum aceticum	Solanum dulcamara
Plumbum metallicum	Solidago virgaurea
Potentilla erecta, ethanol. Decoctum	Spigelia anthelmia
Prunus laurocerasus	Stachys officinalis
Prunus spinosa e summitatibus	Stannum metallicum
Prunus spinosa e summitatibus Rh	Stibium arsenicosum
Pulmonaria officinalis	Stibium metallicum
Pulsatilla vulgaris	Stibium sulphuratum aurantiacum
Pyrit	Strychnos ignatii
Pyromorphit	Strychnos nux-vomica
Quarz	Succinum
Quercus, ethanol. Decoctum	Sulphur
Ranunculus bulbosus	Taraxacum officinale
Raphanus sativus var. Niger	Taraxacum officinale Rh
Rauwolfia serpentina, ethanol. Decoctum	Terebinthina laricina
Rhododendron	Teucrium marum
Rhus toxicodendron	Teucrium scorodonia
Rosmarinus officinalis e foliis recentibus	Thuja occidentalis
Robinia pseudacacia	Thuja occidentalis Rh
Rumex crispus	Urginea maritima, ethanol. Digestio
Ruta graveolens	Veronica officinalis, ethanol. Decoctum
Salvia officinalis	Viola tricolor
Salvia officinalis e foliis siccatis, ethanol. Infusum	Viscum album
Sambucus nigra	Vitex agnus-castus
Sanicula europaea	Vivianit
Sanguinaria canadensis, ethanol. Decoctum	Witherit
Schoenocaulon officinale	Zincum metallicum
Secale cornutum	Zingiber officinale
Selenicereus grandiflorus, ethanol. Digestio	Zinnober

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Correspondence list between HAB production methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy and HPUS classes/general pharmacy

HAB method used in anthroposophic pharmacy	corresponding HPUS class/general pharmacy
Method 1	Class O
Methods 2	Class M
Methods 3	Class N
Method 4a	Class C
Method 4b	Class E
Methods 5 (1:10)	Class A
Methods 5 (1:100)	Class B
Method 6	Class F
Method 7	General Pharmacy section, "Medication: Medicated Powders"
Methods 8	Class H
Method 9	General Pharmacy section, "Medication: Tablets"
Method 10	General Pharmacy section, "Medication: Globules"
Method 11	General Pharmacy section, "Forms of vehicles for dispensing"
Method 12a	General Pharmacy section, "Forms of vehicles for dispensing"
Method 12b	Class M
Method 13	General Pharmacy section, "Forms of vehicles for dispensing"
Method 14	General Pharmacy section, "Forms of vehicles for dispensing"
Method 15	General Pharmacy section, "Forms of vehicles for dispensing: Ophthalmic Solutions"
Method 16	"Introduction to the Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia of the United States: Statement regarding combinations of homoeopathic drugs"
Method 17	General pharmacy section, "Attenuations: Fifty Millesimal Scale of Attenuation"
Method 18a-b	Class M, General Pharmacy section, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Incubation"
Methods 18c-e	Class N, General Pharmacy section, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Incubation"
Methods 18f	Class C, General Pharmacy section, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Incubation"
Methods 19a-b	Class M, General Pharmacy section, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
Methods 19c-e	Class N, General Pharmacy section, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
Method 19f	Class C, General Pharmacy section, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
Method 20	Class C, General Pharmacy section, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Infusion"
Method 21	Class O, fermented
Method 22	Class P
Method 23a	Class C, General Pharmacy section, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
Method 23b	Class N, General Pharmacy section, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
Method 24a	Class C, General Pharmacy section, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Infusion"
Methods 33	Class P
Methods 34	Class P
Methods 35	Class P
Methods 36	Class P
Method 42	Class L, Method II
Method 45	General Pharmacy section, "Forms of vehicles for dispensing: Nasal Solutions"
Method 51	Class P

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

## Index

Term	page(s)
abbreviations	14
acknowledgements	4, 5, 6, 7
active substance	15, 26
algae	20
anthroposophic medicinal product, definition	17
anthroposophic medicinal products	8
anthroposophic pharmaceutical associations	3
anthroposophic pharmacy	8, 28
anthroposophy	8
APC committee	2
ash process	28
ashes	65
Austrian Pharmacopoeia	9
biodynamic	20, 21
blood products	21
botanical origin, starting material of	20, 92
British Pharmacopoeia	9
buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence	45
calcareous products	21
carbonisation	28
carbons	63
Chemical Vapour Decomposition	34
chemically, starting materials that can be described	22, 128
cinis	65
cold maceration	28
cold treated mother tinctures and liquid preparations thereof	35
compositions	15, 24, 73, 136
co-potentised preparations	80
crystal class	19
decoction	28, 53
definitions	16
Demeter	20, 21
distillation	28
digestion	28, 49
Directive 2001/83/EEC	8
Directive 2029/91/EEC	20, 21
distillation	34, 57
distillation products	20
dosage forms	85
essential oils	20
ethanol/water, tinctures made by macerations with water or	37
European Pharmacopoeia	9
excipient	15, 25
fermented tinctures	47
French Pharmacopoeia	9
fungi	20
German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia	9

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Term	page(s)
glossary	15
glycerol, tinctures made by maceration with	39
Goetheanum	1
HAB	14, 143
Herbal drugs for homoeopathic preparations (2045)	9
Homoeopathic preparations (1038)	9
HPUS	14, 143
infusion	28, 51
inorganic	22
internal use, main dosage forms for	85
International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists, IAAP	2
lactose monohydrate	79
legal Situation	8
lichens	20
liquid phase, treatments in	28
liquid potencies	79
liquid solutions	71
maceration	28
Medical Section	1
metabolic system	28, 29
metal	28, 31
metal mirror foil	34
metal mirrors	33, 34
metal preparations	33
Methods of preparation of homoeopathic stocks and potentisation (2371)	9
mineral preparation	31
minerals	19, 89
Minimising the risk of transmitting animal spongiform encephalopathy agents via human and veterinary medicinal products (50208)	9
mixtures	82
Mother tinctures for homoeopathic preparations (2029)	9
natural waters	19, 89
nerves and senses, system of	28, 29
oil extracts with heat treatment	55
oil, liquid preparations made by maceration with	41
oleoresins	20
organic	22
organs	21
parenteral, main dosage forms for	85
percolation, tinctures made by	43
pharmaceutical process	15
pharmaceutical processes, brief description of the main	28
pharmacy extended by the principles of anthroposophy	8
pillules	86
potentisation	28
potentised preparations	79
potentising in an ointment base	81
preparation	15, 26

# ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX

Term	page(s)
raw material	15
raw materials, special treatments of	31
reduction	34
rhythmic application of heat and cold, tinctures obtained by	59
rhythmic processing	28
rhythmic system	28, 29
rocks	19, 89
Schmiedel, Oskar	8
solid phase, treatments in	28
solid potencies	79
solid preparations from fresh plants	67
solid preparations from plant juices or aqueous extracts	69
solid preparations from plants	67
solid starting materials obtained by heat	62
special treatment, starting materials that have undergone	23, 133
specific production methods, correlation table with general monographs	30
starting material	15, 18, 26
Steiner, Rudolf	8
structure of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex	13
succussion	79
Swiss Pharmacopoeia	9
symbols	14
synthesis	24
table of content	11
Tinctures (chapter in 0765)	9
tinctures and oil extracts	35
toasted preparations	62
toasting	28
topical, main dosage forms for	85
trituration	79
TSE safety (Ph.Eur. 50208)	21
vegetabilisation methods	31, 32
vegetabilised metals	32
vegetabilised silica	32
vehicle	15, 25, 79
Viral safety (50107)	9, 21
zoological origin, starting material of	21, 117